Grammatical construction and functions: a comparative study in English French German and Spanish

Elaine White

The University of Montana

Recommended Citation
White, Elaine, "Grammatical construction and functions: a comparative study in English French German and Spanish" (1941). Graduate Student Theses, Dissertations, & Professional Papers. 7834.
https://scholarworks.umt.edu/etd/7834

Let us know how access to this document benefits you.
Follow this and additional works at: https://scholarworks.umt.edu/etd

This Thesis is brought to you for free and open access by the Graduate School at ScholarWorks at University of Montana. It has been accepted for inclusion in Graduate Student Theses, Dissertations, & Professional Papers by an authorized administrator of ScholarWorks at University of Montana. For more information, please contact scholarworks@mso.umt.edu.
GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION AND FUNCTIONS:

A COMPARATIVE STUDY

in

ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN AND SPANISH

by

Elaine White

(B.A., Montana State University, 1940)

Presented in partial fulfillment of the requirement for the degree of Master of Arts.

Montana State University

1941

Approved:

Chairman of Board of Examiners

Chairman of Committee on Graduate Study
PREFACE

It is the purpose of this paper to provide the student of several languages with a supplementary reference to which he can turn for comparisons of some major grammatical functions and formations existing in Spanish, French, German, and English.

Since the task of comparing grammatical points is endless, this paper is far from complete, but it is hoped that it will be beneficial in helping the student having a knowledge of one of the languages as he enters upon the task of learning another.

The abstracts of grammar have been arranged as nearly as possible in the same order for all languages with the intention of aiding the user to make his own comparisons as they suggest themselves. Due to the fact that the writer has presupposed the user's thorough knowledge of English, those abstracts devoted to that language have been given in more condensed form than those which deal with the other languages.

Definitions of major grammatical terms (those used in this paper as well as others) have been arranged alphabetically and have been defined in grammatical terms to apply to all languages, not as they apply to each individually. Their meanings are treated more extensively as they
occur in conjunction with the various languages.

The study of language is a fascinating one and it is the sincere hope of the writer that this paper will not only be helpful to the language student but that it will also increase his interest in language and languages.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAPTER</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. AGREEMENT</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison and Comment.</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. THE ARTICLE.</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definite Article - uses and omission</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite Article - uses and omission</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agreement of</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repetition of</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definite Article - uses and omission</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite Article - uses and omission</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive Article - uses and omission</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agreement of</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repetition of</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definite Article - uses and omission</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite Article - uses and omission</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agreement of</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repetition of</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definite Article - uses and omission</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite Article - uses and omission</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter Lo - uses</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agreement of</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repetition of</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison and Comment.</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. GENDER</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for determining</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By meaning</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By form</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By derivation</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nouns of double gender</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound nouns</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of feminine from masculine</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation in other ways</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for determining.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By meaning.</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By form</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By derivation</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double gender</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound nouns</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of feminine from masculine</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation in other ways</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for determining.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By meaning.</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By form</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By derivation</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double gender</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound nouns</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of feminine from masculine</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation in other ways</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for determining.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By meaning.</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By form</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By derivation</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double gender</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound nouns</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of feminine from masculine</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation in other ways</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter gender.</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison and Comment.</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. INFLECTION</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charts</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definite</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantives</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diminutives</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degrees</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardinal</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinal</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degree</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal parts</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of tense from principal parts</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of conjugations</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weak conjugation</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative tenses</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strong conjugation</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive mood</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative mood</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive voice</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive verbs</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal verbs</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impersonal verbs</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound verbs</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definite - declension and contraction</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite - declension and contraction</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive - declension and contraction</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantives</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal - conjunctive and disjunctive</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of Diminutives</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degrees</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardinal</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinal</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degrees</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal parts</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of tenses from principal parts</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of conjugations</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First conjugation</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative tenses</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second conjugation</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative tenses</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third conjugation</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative tenses</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive mood</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative mood</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive voice</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive verbs</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal verbs</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthographical changing</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impersonal verbs</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound verbs</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definite - declension and contraction</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite - declension and contraction</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uninflected Article</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantive</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First declension</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second declension</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third declension</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth declension</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular noun declension</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declension of proper names</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declension of nouns derived from adjectives</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound nouns</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of nouns</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diminutives</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender, number and case</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weak declension</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed declension</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strong declension</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uninflected adjective</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregularities in adjective declension</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degrees</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numeral</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardinal</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinal</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of adjectives</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degrees</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal parts</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of tenses from principal parts</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of conjugations</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weak conjugation</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative tenses</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strong conjugation</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative tenses</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive mood</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative mood</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive voice</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive verbs</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal verbs</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthographical changing</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular weak verbs</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modals</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impersonal verbs</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modal auxiliaries</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound verbs</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separable prefixes</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inseparable prefixes</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doubtful prefixes</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definite - declension and contraction</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite - declension and contraction</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter Lo</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantives</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diminutives</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apocopeation of</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degrees</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardinal</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinal</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degrees</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal parts</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of tenses from principal parts</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of conjugations</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First conjugation</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative tenses</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second conjugation</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative tenses</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third conjugation</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formation of principal parts</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative tenses</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive tenses</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive mood</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First conjugation</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second &amp; third conjugations</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative mood</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive voice</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>True</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animate</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inanimate</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive verbs</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal verbs</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthographical changing</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impersonal verbs</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound verbs</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y and O</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal a.</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison and Comment</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. VERBS</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of tenses</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of moods</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive – uses and substitutes.</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative – uses and substitutes.</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive – uses and substitutes.</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary verbs</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect tense</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future and conditional tense</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive tense</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emphatic tense</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quasi-auxiliaries</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive voice</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of tenses</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past absolute</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past anterior</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound past anterior</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional perfect</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Uses of moods</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive - use of</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent clause</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dependent clause</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun clause</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective clause</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb clause</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence of tense</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative mood - uses and substitutes</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive - uses and substitutes</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary verbs</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perfect tense</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoir</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etre</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quasi-auxiliaries</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of passive voice</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of tenses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional perfect</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present (Form I)</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present (Form II)</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect (Form I)</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect (Form II)</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of moods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive – uses of</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent clause</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun clause</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrary to face statement</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence of tenses</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative – uses and substitutes</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive – uses and substitutes</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reciprocal</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary verbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect tense</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haben</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sein</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAPTER</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future and conditional tense</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quasi-auxiliaries</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modals</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of passive voice</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of tenses</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preterite</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preterite perfect</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional perfect</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preterite</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect and preterite perfect</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uses of moods</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive - uses</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent clause</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dependent clause</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun clause</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective clause</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb clause</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrary to fact condition</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitutes for</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence of tenses</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative - uses and substitutes</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary verbs.</td>
<td>Perfect tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>Past Participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison and Comment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. WORD ORDER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affirmative statements</td>
<td>Simple, complex, compound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French.</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affirmative statements</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple, complex, compound</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statement</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With perfect tenses</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objects</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun and pronoun</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German.</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affirmative statements</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent clause</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal word order</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inverted word order</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dependent clause</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transposed word order</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun and pronoun</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle and Infinitive</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separable prefix</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affirmative statements</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple, complex, compound</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statement</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun and Pronoun</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison and Comment</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFINITIONS</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIBLIOGRAPHY</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER I

AGREEMENT

English

I. Article—agreement of
The agreement of the English article with substantives is not shown since only one form of the definite article (the) and two for the indefinite article (a— an)¹ exist.

II. Adjective
Since the adjective is uninflected in English, agreement is not shown between adjective and substantive.

III. Adverbs
Adverbs are invariable except for the formation of the comparative and superlative degrees.

IV. Pronouns
Pronouns agree in person, number, and gender with the noun for which they stand.

V. Noun
A noun must have a verb which agrees with it in person and number.
See also Verb.

VI. Verb
A. Verbs agree with the subject in person and number.
B. A verb with a compound subject is used in the plural number. (John and Mary are here.)

¹The indefinite article a— an is inflected not as to case, number, or gender but for euphony—before words beginning in a vowel the an form is used, in all other cases a is used. Common usage allows the use of a before u when u has the y sound (a unit). However, purist English requires an before all vowels.
VI. Verb (cont.)
   C. A verb with a collective noun as subject is used in the singular number. (A group of students is here.)
   D. Two or more pronouns used as subject of one verb requires the plural form. (You and he are coming.)
   E. Two or more substantives joined by either, or, neither, nor, will use the verb in the singular. (Neither he nor she has the book.)

VII. Past Participle
   The past participle is invariable.

VIII. Present Participle
   The present participle is invariable.

French

I. Article
   The article (direct, indirect and partitive) in French must agree with its substantive in number and gender and must be repeated before each noun unless the nouns have collective meaning (as Les père et mère.)

II. Adjective
   A. An adjective, used attributively or predicatively must agree in gender and number with the substantive which it modifies.
   B. One adjective modifying two nouns of the same gender, but both singular, will be used in the same gender as the nouns but will be in the plural. (La mère et la soeur sont contentes.)
   C. One adjective modifying two nouns of unlike gender will be used in the masculine plural form. (La mère et le père sont contents.)

Since the plural endings of the English verb are the same for all persons, the person or persons of the pronouns used as subject is unimportant in choice of verb form to be used.

Unlike German in that German adjective used predicatively does not agree. Spanish is like French.
II. Adjective (cont.)

D. Two or more adjectives referring to one noun, the noun will be in the plural and the adjectives are in the singular and follow. (Les nations grecque et romaine.)

E. Adjectives used as adverbs are, of course, invariable.

F. Nouns used as adjectives agree like adjectives. (Une maîtresse cheminée).

G. Compound adjectives if coordinate, inflect both parts, otherwise the subordinate part remains invariable. (Des sourds--mutes--deaf mutes--coordinate. Une dame haut placée--a lady of high rank--haut is subordinate, hence invariable.)

H. Adjectives derived from nouns that denote color are invariable.4 (Des cheveux blond ardent).

I. Past participles used as adjectives are inflected as any adjective. (Des fêtes données par le roi).

J. Possessive adjectives agree with their nouns as any adjective. (Elle a son crayon et sa plume)5

K. Cardinal numerals are invariable except for quatre-vingt (quatre-vingts in plural) and cent (cents). Quatre-vingt agrees with the noun if immediately followed by the noun or by a noun modified by an adjective. These two numerals also have their plural forms when used as nouns of number.6

L. Ordinal numerals agree as any adjective and have full adjectival inflection.

III. Adverbs

Adverbs are invariable as to agreement being inflected only to form the superlative and comparative degrees.

---

4Exceptions: rose, cramoisie, pourpre.

5Unlike English, since the English possessive pronoun agrees with the possessive. In French, Spanish and German, the possessive pronoun agrees with the object possessed.

6Vingt and cent may add a before another numeral.

7Except tout. When tout is used adverbially, it agrees as any adjective. (Elles etaient toutes pâles.)
IV. Pronoun
   A. All pronouns, if variable, must agree with the noun, pronoun, nouns or pronouns for which they stand in person, number, and gender.
   B. Pronouns used subjectively must agree in person and number with the verb.
   C. Ce takes singular form of the verb unless the predicate contains a plural predicate pronoun in the third person. (C'est lui; ce sont eux.)
   D. Il (impersonal) always takes verb in singular.
   E. Compound pronoun subjects of different persons take the verb in the first person plural if one of the pronouns is of the first person, otherwise the verb will be in the second person plural.
   F. Pronouns of different persons connected by ni, ni each have a verb, (Ni lui n'est pas bon ni je ne le suis.) or the verb may be plural first person if one of pronouns is first person, otherwise second person. (Ni vous ni moi ne connaissons.)

V. Noun
   A. A noun used as subject must take a verb which agrees in person and number.
   B. Compound subject composed of nouns takes third person plural of the verb. (Le père et la mère sont là.)
   C. As in English, Spanish and German nouns connected by ou, ni...ni take singular verb if the subjects are exclusive. (L'un ou l'autre me convient. Ni l'un ni l'autre ne me convient.) Generally, however, ni...ni requires verb in the plural. (Ni le français ni l'anglais ne lui sont faciles.)

---

*except the possessive pronoun, which agrees with the possessor.

9These subjects are recapitulated by some word with which verb agrees as in other languages.

10The person of the noun in all languages is third; hence always take the verb in the third person.

11Unless are nearly synonymous and not connected by et. In this case the verb may be singular. (Sa dignité, sa noblesse frappa tout le monde.) (Often these subjects are recapitulated by some word with which verb agrees.)
V. Nouns (cont.)
D. Collective noun preceded by le or la takes a singular verb. (La multitude des hommes aime l'argent.)
E. Collective noun preceded by un or une plus de and a plural noun take plural verb. (Une foule d'enfants jouaient.)
F. See also Verb.

VI. Verbs
A. A finite verb must agree in person and number with its subject.
B. A verb having a compound noun as subject, both components of which are in the singular, will be used in the plural. (La mère et le père sont ici.)
C. A collective noun in the singular takes a singular verb. (Le peuple français est brave.)
D. After ce the verb is in the singular unless the predicate contains a plural pronoun in the third person. (C'est lui, ce sont eux.)
E. Il (impersonal) always takes a singular verb.
F. A verb having a compound subject of different persons is usually in plural. The verb will be in first person if one of the pronouns is of the first person. Otherwise the verb will be in second person form. (Toi et moi nous ne faisons qu'un. Vous et lui vous ne faites qu'un.)
G. As in English, Spanish and German, a compound subject connected by ou, ni...ni takes a singular verb. (L'un ou l'autre me convient.)

---

12 This is contrary to Spanish where a collective noun followed by de plus a plural noun would take a plural subject; but it is like English and German. French noun preceded by le or la and a superlative plus de plus plural noun takes plural verb. (La plus grand partie des enfant jouaient.)

13 Comparable to Spanish

14 Exception: if collective noun is followed by de plus a plural noun, the verb is plural. This is unlike English, which takes the singular verb in either case. (Une partie des soldats sont là.) (But is like Spanish.)

15 In such cases the pleonastic nous or vous is generally inserted. (Comparable to other languages.)

16 The ne after ni...ni is also found in Spanish in such constructions.
VI. Verbs (cont.)

H. If there is a compound subject all parts of which are used in the sense of enumeration, the verb will be in the singular. (Une excuse, un mot, tout le désarme.)

I. A verb governing a pronoun and a relative agrees with the pronoun. (Toi qui parles.)

J. A verb governing a subject followed by avec agrees with first subject. (Lui avec ses peres est arrivé.)

K. See also noun and pronoun.

VII. Past Participles

A. Avoir in perfect tenses.
   1. does not agree with subject.
   2. does agree with preceding direct objects as any adjective. (Les chapeaux que j'ai achetés.)

B. Être in perfect tenses
   191. agrees with subject in gender and number. (Elle est arrivée.)

C. Past participles used as adjectives agree as any adjective. (Des fêtes données par le roi.)

D. In reflexive tenses être agrees with the subject or reflexive pronoun which is the same person, number and gender as the subject. (Ils se sont réjouis.)

E. Past participles of impersonal verbs are invariable. (La belle journée qu'il a fait!)

17 Such expressions are generally summed up by an indefinite pronoun—tout, rien, etc. Just as pleonastic vous or nous is interpolated after compound subjects consisting of several pronouns of different persons. This corresponds to Spanish recapitulation with todo.

18 Comparable to other languages. (German repetition of pronoun. (Ich, der ich spreche--)

19 Comparable to other languages. (German repetition of pronoun. (Ich, der ich spreche--)

20a Except in case of reflexive verbs where there is a preceding direct object. In such cases the past participle agrees with the object. In other cases with reflexive verbs the past participle agrees with the subject. (Les robes qu'elle s'est achetées.) Mercier College French has a good table for this. Page 348, paragraph 221.
VIII. Present Participle
A. Used adjectively the present participle agrees as any adjective, otherwise it is invariable.20
(Une scène charmante.)
B. After en it is invariable. (Il chante en écrivant.)

German

1. Article (definite and indefinite)
A. Must agree in gender, number and case with each noun with which it is used.21
B. The article must appear before every noun in a series of nouns if there is a change of gender; if there is no change in gender, it may be omitted. (der Kaiser und der König—indicates two people.) (der Kaiser und König—indicates one person.)

II. Adjective
A. If attributive must agree in case, gender and number with each noun it modifies. (Ein kranke Kind.)
B. The adjective must appear before each noun it modifies if there is a change of gender. (Ein guter Knabe und ein gutes Mädchen.)
C. In the predicate, not used attributively, the adjective is uninflected.22 (Das Kind ist krank.)
D. Adjectives used as adverbs are uninflected.
E. Adjectives derived from participles are inflected when used attributively, agreeing in case, number and gender with each noun.

20If the present participle stresses action, it should not agree—it agrees only when the emphasis is on the resulting state. (Elle était là charmant tout le monde—she was there charming everyone; but, Elle était charmante—she was charming.

21For omission of der and ein before nouns see page 31 & 32.

22Even predicate adjectives, if they have articles preceding, are considered as being attributive and must agree in case, number and gender with a noun understood.
II. Adjective

F. Adjectives used substantively are inflected in gender, number and case as if agreeing with an understood noun. (They are used in masculine and feminine singular and plural to denote persons and in the neuter singular to denote abstract quality.)

G. Cardinal numerals, except ein, are uninflected whether used attributively or predicatively. Ein is fully inflected and agrees in number, gender, and case with each noun.

H. Ordinal numerals are fully inflected and agree as any adjective.

I. Two or more attributive adjectives to one noun have the same endings. (Ein gutes fleissiges Kind.)

J. Comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives are inflected as any adjective in the positive degree and agree in number, gender and case with the noun when used attributively.

III. Adverb

A. Are invariable except for formation of the comparative and superlative degrees.

B. Comparative and superlative degrees of adverbs, once formed, are invariable.

IV. Pronouns

A. All pronouns must agree in person, number and gender with the noun or pronoun for which they stand. Their case depends upon their own function in the sentence.

---

23Cf. names of languages which are adjectives used as substantives are invariable and take no article. Adjectives denoting color used as substantives are neuter and admit no inflection except the genitive.

24Zwei and drei may also be inflected if the case of the noun is not otherwise shown.

25Adjective ordinal numbers must always be preceded by some form of der.

26In the classics often only the last adjective is inflected.

27Except possessive pronoun which unlike English but like Spanish and French, agrees not with the possessor but with the object possessed.
IV. Pronouns (cont.)

B. Pronouns used as subject must agree in number and person with the verb.

C. Impersonal es always takes the verb in the third person singular form.28

D. Pronouns of different person connect by weder...noch—only one has a verb. (Weder er hat es noch ich.)

E. Two pronouns governing one verb take plural form.29 The verb will be first person if one of the pronouns is of the first person, otherwise the verb will be of the second person. (Du und ich werden gehen.) (Du und er werdets gehen.)

F. A pronoun followed by a relative, both governing the same verb, either takes third person verb or else the pronoun must be repeated in which case verb agrees with it. (Ich, der spricht, or, Ich, der ich spreche.)31

G. See also Verb.

V. Noun

A. A noun must agree in person and number (always third person) with its verb, when used as subject of that verb.

B. Adjectives used as nouns are inflected as an adjective and must agree as an adjective in gender, number and case with an understood noun.32

C. Nouns derived from the present participles are inflected as any adjective used attributively with a noun understood.

D. Two or more nouns connected by entweder...oder, or, weder...noch, take singular verb as in English, French, and Spanish. (Weder der Knabe noch das Mädchen ist fleissig.)

28Except in impersonal expressions it may be used with sind. See impersonal verbs, page 127.

29As in other languages.

30German would try to avoid this construction, replacing it with some such expression as: Du wirst mit ihm gehen.

31This usage is confined to the second and third persons.

32Cf. names of languages which are invariable and take no article. Adjectives denoting color may be used as nouns, in which case they are neuter and remain invariable except for genitive s.
V. Noun (cont.)

E. Compound subjects connected by und take plural verb. (Der Vater und die Mutter sind gut.)

F. Collective nouns take a singular verb. (Die Menge ist gegangen.)

G. A noun followed by mit and another noun takes the verb agreeing with the first noun. (Er geht mit seiner Schwester.)

H. See also Verb.

VI. Verb

A. A verb must agree with its subject in person and number.

B. A verb governing two or more nouns is plural unless the nouns are connected by entweder...oder or weder...noch. (Der Vater und die Mutter sind gut; but, Weder der Knabe noch das Mädchen ist fleissig.)

C. A verb governing a series of nouns which form a unity is in the singular. (Der Strom, das Meer, das Gebirge ist schön.)

D. A verb governing two pronouns of different persons is in first person plural if one of pronouns is of first person; otherwise, it is second person plural.

E. See also noun and pronoun.

VII. Past Participle

A. When used as an attributive, adjective must agree in number, gender and case with the substantive it modifies.

B. As a noun it follows the rules of any adjective used substantively. (See II—Agreement of Adjective, number six.)

C. Used as a verb form is invariable.

33 Exception: when has plural noun in apposition. (Eine Menge Gäste waren dabei.) (This corresponds to French and Spanish collective nouns followed by de plus a plural noun.) (English always uses singular after collective nouns.)

34 As in other languages

35 As in French and Spanish, but contrary to English.

36 As in other languages.
VIII. Present Participle

A. When used as a noun, is declined and agrees with noun as any adjective. (See II--Agreement of Adjective, number six.)

B. Used as an adjective must agree in number, gender and case with substantive it modifies.

Spanish

I. Article

A. The definite and indefinite article must agree in number and gender with each noun.

B. When there are two or more nouns of different gender, the article must precede each one.

C. If the nouns are of like gender, the article may be omitted before the second noun. (El convenio y tratado de que hablábamos.)

II. Adjective

A. An adjective must agree in number and gender with the substantive it modifies, whether the adjective is used attributively or predicatively. (Ellos son buenos.)

B. An adjective occurring in the predicate which modifies two singular (or plural) nouns of unlike genders will be used in the masculine plural. (La niña y el niño son perezosos.)

C. An adjective relating to several singular nouns of like gender is placed in the plural of that gender. (La madre y la niña son bonitas.)

D. Adjectives must agree in number and gender with anything which they modify. (¿Porqué están Vds. cansados?)

37Except before feminine nouns beginning with the vowel a or ha, in which cases for euphony, the masculine singular form is used. (el agua). In the plural, however, the feminine form is used. This corresponds to English use of a or an. (A boy, but before a vowel, an—an angel.)

38If the nouns are very similar in meaning, although of different gender, the article may be omitted before the second noun. (La cordialidad y agasajo con que los recibió.)

39Although even here, if the nouns have no affinity with each other, it is advisable to use the article before each noun.
II. Adjective (cont.)

E. Cardinal numerals are invariable except uno and ciento which have full inflection and agree in number and gender as any adjective.

F. Ordinal numerals have full adjectival inflection and agree as any adjective.

G. An adjective modifying several nouns following agrees with the noun closest to it. (Su distinguido mérito y servicios.)

H. Plural forms of adjectives having meanings like las dichas, los mismos, etc. May precede a series of nouns even when the first noun of the series is singular in form. (Los mismos asado y patatas—)

I. Any adjective preceded by the definite article or by a possessive or demonstrative pronoun used to modify two or more proper names or two or more nouns referring to persons is placed in plural form. (Los buenos padre y madre.)

III. Adverb

A. Adverbs, except for formation of the comparative and superlative degrees are invariable.

B. The comparative and superlative degrees, once formed, are invariable.

IV. Pronoun

A. A pronoun must agree in gender, number and person with any noun or pronoun for which it stands.40

B. Pronoun used as subject agrees in person and number with the finite verb.

C. Unlike Spanish nouns—pronouns of different persons connected by o or ni...ni with a verb, must each have a verb. (Ni Vd. es el culpable ni lo soy yo.)

D. See also verb VI.

40 Except for possessive pronouns which, unlike English, but like French and German, agree not with the possessor but with the object possessed.
V. Noun
A. Used as subject must agree in person and number with its verb.
B. Several nouns used as subject of a verb take plural verbs, even though the nouns are all singular. (La madre y el padre están allí.)
C. Two subjects not connected by y, the last of which is a mere variation of the first, the verb agrees with the second noun. (Su valor, su demeudo, admiraba a todo el mundo.)
D. Several nouns arranged in series with a common verb may be recapitulated by an indefinite pronoun. (La agricultura, las bellas artes, todo le interesa)
E. Several nouns connected by o or ni...ni take the verb in the singular. (Mi tío o mi hermano vendrá.)
F. When singular nouns are connected with another noun by con, como, así como, tanto como, the verb is generally singular. (El niño con su hermano llegó.)
G. A collective noun takes singular verb. (La gente huyó.)
H. Singular nouns such as mitad, parte, etc. may take plural verbs. (Más de la mitad de la población son indios.)
I. See also Verb VI.

VI. Verb
A. A verb must agree with its subject in person and number.

41 Exceptions: (1) unless the nouns express a single idea. El abrir y cerrar de la puerta le molesta.
(2) Two neuter clauses used as subject of verb take singular verb. Esto y lo que había pasado nos decidió a partir.
(3) Two or more infinitives used as subject take singular verb. (Ganar mucho y gastar poco asegurará las riquezas.)

42 As in French.

43 If the verb precedes the ni...ni expression no must be inserted before the verb. (No vendrá ni mi tío ni mi hermano.)

44 As in English.
VI. Verb (cont.)

B. A verb used as predicate of two or more singular nouns connected by y is in plural. (La madre y la hija son buenas.)

C. A verb used as a predicate of two or more singular nouns connected by o or ni...ni is singular. (La madre o la hija está allí. Ni la madre ni la hija está allí.)

D. Two or more pronouns of different person with one verb take the verb in the first person plural if one of the pronouns is of the first person—otherwise the verb is in the second person. The verb will be plural in either case. (Tu y yo somos cansados. Tu y él sois cansados.)

E. A verb used with a collective noun is singular. (La gente huyó.)

F. A verb used with a collective noun followed by de plus plural noun takes a plural verb. (Una docena de huevos están en la mesa.)

G. A verb with singular nouns mitad, parte, etc., may be plural. ( Más de la mitad de la población son indios.)

H. A verb governing a pronoun and relative agrees with the pronoun. (Yo que hablo estoy aquí.)

I. See also agreement of Noun and Pronoun, IV and V above.

VII. Past Participle

A. Are invariable when used in perfect tenses.

B. Used as adjectives agree in gender and number as any adjective, whether used attributively or predicatively.

C. Used with ser to form the passive voice must agree in person and number with the subject. (Ella fue amada de él.)

---

45 See footnote 43 page 13.

46 As in French.

47 As in other languages.

48 As in French and English, German has peculiar parallel to this in repetition of the pronoun. (Ich, der ich spreche, bin hier.)
VIII. Present Participle
   A. Used to form the progressive tenses is invariable.
   B. Always invariable.

Comparison

I. Article

The article agrees with its noun in number and gender in French, German and Spanish. In German the article must also agree in case with its noun. The articles in English are uninflected as to gender, number and case\(^49\) and, therefore, show no agreement.

II. Adjective

The adjective in English is invariable except for formation of the comparative and superlative degrees. The one form of the adjective is used for all genders and both numbers. In the other languages, adjectives are inflected and must agree with the nouns they modify in gender and number (and in German, case)\(^50\)

Hence:

\[
\begin{align*}
a & \text{ good boy, good boys} \\
a & \text{ good girl, good girls}
\end{align*}
\]

\(^49\)There are two forms for the indefinite article in English, *a*--*an*. *An* is used before nouns beginning with a vowel except *u*; before *u* pronounced as *y* (unit), *a* may be used.

\(^50\)Only attributive adjectives in German have inflectional agreement.
II. Adjective (cont.)

un bon fils, de bona fils
une bonne fille, de bonnes filles

ein guter Knabe, gute Knaben
ein gutes Mädchen, gute Mädchen

un buen muchacho, buenos muchachos
una buena muchacha, buenas muchachas

It is a peculiarity of the German language that adjectives used in the predicate do not agree with the nouns they modify. In French and Spanish adjectives must always agree.

Les filles sont belles.
Die Mädchen sind schön.
Las muchachas son bonitas.
The girls are pretty.

It is also a peculiarity of the German language that attributive adjectives (and articles) must agree in case with nouns they modify.

Il le donne à la bonne fille.\footnote{Note the use of the preposition to denote case in French, Spanish and English. In German case is denoted by inflectional endings.}
Er gibt es dem guten Mädchen.
El lo da a la buena muchacha.
He gives it to the good girl.
II. Adjective (cont.)

In all of the languages showing inflectional agreement, one adjective used predicatively and modifying several singular nouns (or plural nouns) of different genders will be masculine plural. If the nouns are all feminine, the adjective will be feminine plural.

Le père et la mère sont bons.
Der Vater und die Mutter sind gut.
El padre y la madre son buenos.
The father and mother are good.
La fille et la mère sont bonnes.
Die Mutter und das Mädchen sind gut.
La muchacha y la madre son buenas.
The girl and the mother are good.

An adjective used attributively must be repeated before each noun in French, German and Spanish.

Le bon homme et la bonne femme.
Der gute Vater und die gute Mutter.
El buen hombre y la buena mujer.
The good man and woman.

\[52\text{German adjectives used predicatively do not agree.}\]

\[53\text{No agreement used predicatively.}\]
III. Adverb

Adverbs are invariable in all languages except for the formation of the comparative and superlative degrees and therefore show no agreement. 54

IV. Pronoun and Noun

In all languages the pronoun agrees with the noun or pronoun for which it stands in person, number and gender. All languages have similar rules governing this agreement except with regard to the possessive pronoun. In English the possessive pronoun agrees in person and number and gender with the possessor and not with the object possessed. In the other languages, the possessive pronoun agrees in person only with the possessor, the gender and number depending upon the object possessed. Hence:

The books are hers. The book is hers.

Les livres sont les siens. Le livre est le sien. 55

Die Bücher sind die ihren. Das Buch ist das ihre. 56

54 Except tout in French, which agrees as any adjective. (Elles sont toutes pâles.)

55 French and Spanish make no distinction between his and hers, using the same forms for both. For clarity the French phrase, à lui or à elle and the Spanish phrase, de él or de ella is added. (Les livres sont à elle; los libros son de ella.)

56 In German there are separate forms for his and her (der seine, der ihre, etc.)
IV. Pronoun and Noun (cont.)

Los libros son los suyos. El libro es el suyo. See footnote page 18.

V. Pronoun and Verb

In all languages the pronoun subject must have a verb which agrees in number and person.

Il va.
Er geht.
El va.
He goes.

In all languages compound pronoun subjects of different persons require a plural verb. If one of the pronouns is of the first person, the verb will be first person; if not, the verb will be of the second person.

A. Lui et moi nous irons.
Er und ich werden gehen.
El y yo iremos.
He and I shall go.

B. Toi et lui vous irez.
Du und er werdet gehen.

---

57 It is a peculiarity of French to recapitulate the subject.
58 Same as 57.
59 More common in German would be Du wirst mit ihm gehen, or some equivalent.
V. Pronoun and Verb (cont.)

Tu y él ireís.
You and he will go.

The English use of neither as the subject requiring a third person singular verb is peculiar to this language. In Spanish and French each pronoun has its own verb. In German the first pronoun has a verb, the second pronoun an understood verb. Thus:

Neither he nor I is good.
Ni vous n'êtes pas bon ni je ne le suis.60 & 61
Weder er ist gut noch ich.60
Ni es Vd. bueno ni lo soy yo.61

VI. Noun and Verb

In all languages the verb must agree with its noun subject in person and number. Since nouns are in most cases considered as being of the third person, number must have most consideration.

In all languages a compound subject composed of several nouns joined by and (et, und, y) even though each noun is singular, must take a plural verb.

More common in French and German would be: Ni vous ni moi ne sommes bons. Weder er noch ich sind gut.

Note that in French the regular negative forms (ne...pas and no) are used. In Spanish this is done only if the ni...ni construction follows the verb.
VI. Noun and Verb (cont.)

Le père et la mère sont ici.
Der Vater und die Mutter sind hier.
El padre y la madre están aquí.
The father and mother are here.

In English, French, German and Spanish a compound subject composed of several nouns arranged in a series and forming a unified idea takes a singular verb. In English, French and Spanish the subject is recapitulated.

Une excuse, un mot, tout le désarme.
Eine Entschuldigung, ein Wort beruhigt ihn.
Una excusa, una palabra, todo le aplaca.
An excuse, a word, everything appeases him.

In all languages a singular subject followed by with (avec, mit, con) followed by a plural noun requires a singular verb.

Le fils avec ses frères est là.
Der Knabe mit seinen Brüdern ist da.
El muchacho con sus hermanos está allí.
The boy with his brothers is there.

A collective noun not followed by of (de, genitive plural in German, de) plus a plural noun, takes a singular verb in all languages.

Le peuple français est brave.
VI. Noun and Verb (cont.)

Das deutsche Volk ist tapfer.

La gente española es valiente.

The English people is brave.62

In French and Spanish a collective noun followed by de plus a plural noun requires a plural verb. In German a collective noun followed by a plural genitive noun in apposition requires a plural verb. In English the verb remains singular.

Une foule d’enfants jouaient.

Eine Menge Kinder spielten.

Una multitud de niños jugaban.

A crowd of children was playing.

In all languages several nouns connected by neither...nor (ni...ni; weder...noch; ni...ni) require singular verb.

Ni Marie ni Jean n’est pas là.

Weder Marie noch Johann ist da.

Ni María ni Juan está allí.

Neither Mary nor John is there.

VII. Past Participle

A. As verbal form (Perfect Tenses and Passive Voice)

In English, German and Spanish the past parti-
VII. Past Participle (cont.)

Past participle is invariable when used to form the perfect tenses. In French past participles of verbs forming their compound tenses with être must agree with the subject in gender and number, and past participles of verbs forming their compound tenses with avoir must agree with preceding direct objects; otherwise they are uninflected.

Elle est allée. Quels livres a-t-il apportés?
Sie ist gegangen. Welche Bücher hat er gebracht?
Ella ha ido. Que libros ha traído el?
She has gone. What books has he brought?

Elle a écrit.
Sie hat geschrieben.
Ella ha escrito.
She has written.

B. In Passive Voice

In English and German the past participle has no agreement when used in the passive voice. In French and Spanish the past participle when used in the passive voice must agree with the subject in number and gender.

---

63Except of reflexive verbs with a preceding direct object, when it agrees with the object. (Elle s'est blessée (no direct object). Les robes qu'elle s'est achetées (direct object).
VII. Past Participle (cont.)

Elle est louée.
Sie wird gelobt.
Ella es alabada (de él.).
She is praised.

C. Used as Adjective

In all languages except English, past participles used as adjectives (must be attributive in German) have full adjectival inflection and agree as any adjective in gender and number (and case in German when attributive) with the noun or nouns which they modify.

Les dons donnés par lui.
Die von ihm gegebenen Geschenke.
Los regalos dados por él.
The gifts given by him.

VIII. Present Participle

In Spanish and English the present participle is invariable and hence shows no agreement.

In German and French participles may be used as adjectives and as such have full adjectival agreement.

---

64In Spanish the agent must be expressed for this formation of passive voice. Common usage allows of true passive without the agent, just as it allows for the reflexive passive form with the agent expressed, but Purist Spanish insists upon the distinction.
VIII. Present Participle (cont.)

(German must be attributive.) In French they agree in number and gender with nouns modified; in German, in number, gender and case.

Une scène charmante.

Eine bezaubernde Szene.
CHAPTER II

ARTICLE

English

I. The Definite Article
   A. For inflection of—see page 61.
   B. Uses:
      1. Before nouns in apposition
      2. Before adjectives used as nouns
      3. Before nouns of indeterminate sense. (to have the time)
      4. Before titles
   C. Omitted
      1. Before the names of countries
      2. Before the names of days of the week
      3. Before the names of months of the year
      4. Before the names of the seasons
      5. Before the names of geographical places
      6. Before modified proper names
      7. Before nouns used in general sense (Life is short.)

II. Indefinite Article
   A. Inflection—see page 61.
   B. Uses
      1. Before nouns in apposition
      2. After what and such in exclamations
      3. Before titles
      4. Before numerals (hundred, etc.)
      5. After is to denote nouns of profession, rank, etc.
   C. Omitted
      1. Before abstract nouns (a man of intellect)

---

1 The use of the article or its omission is optional in such cases.

2 May also be omitted.
III. Agreement
The agreement between article and noun is not noticeable in English since the definite article has only one form (the) for all nouns, masculine, feminine, neuter—singular or plural, and the indefinite article (a—an) changes form from a only before nouns beginning with a vowel (an apple).

IV. Repetition
It is not necessary to repeat the article before each noun as it is in the other languages unless it is done for emphasis.

French

I. Definite Article
A. Inflection—see page 71.
B. Uses
1. To modify nouns
2. Before nouns used in a general sense (J'étudie la musique.)
3. Before the names of languages (Savez-vous le français?)
4. Before proper names when accompanied by a title or profession (La reine Victoria)
5. In direct and indirect address, between the words monsieur, mademoiselle and the title. (Bonjour, monsieur le docteur.) (Monsieur le docteur viendra.)
6. Before geographical names. (l'Amérique, la France)
7. Before adjectives used as nouns (Elle aime mieux le blanc.)


5Names of cities generally are not preceded by the article, except le Havre.
I. Definite Article (cont.)

8. Before the names of the week if used in sense of series. (Elle a une leçon le samedi.)

9. Before names of the seasons. (Elle aime mieux l’été.)

10. Before dates to translate the English on. (Il est arrivé le quinze mars.)

11. To replace the possessive adjective when the possessor is clearly understood. (Il s’est blessé le doigt.)

12. To replace the indefinite article with nouns denoting measure or quantity. (trois francs le demi-kilo.)

13. Before abstract nouns. (la vérité)

14. Before the names of most feast days. (La Saint-Jean)

C. Omission

1. With nouns in apposition. (Henri, fils de monsieur le docteur)

2. Before numerals when used in a sense of succession of sovereigns. (Edward sept)


4. After prepositions en and de when used with feminine names of countries. (Il demeure en Italie.)

5. Before nouns used adjectively. (un chapeau de feutre)

6. With unmodified predicate nouns. (Il est docteur.)

7. In expressions to translate the English—the more...the more—the less...the less. (Moins il travaille, moins il gagne.)

---

6Except when preceded by en. (en été.)

7Par may also be used—cinq francs par leçon.

7bExcept Pâques, Noël.

8Like Spanish but unlike English and German. If noun in apposition is modified, French uses article. (Montreal, le plus grande ville.)

9But, Il est le bon docteur.
I. Definite Article (cont.)
8. Before nouns listed in enumerations. (Bourgeois et payans sont animés du même espoir.)

II. Indefinite Article
A. Inflection—see page 71.
B. Uses
1. To modify substantives.
2. Before abstract nouns. (Il a une patience extrême.)
3. Before million and milliard.
4. With modified predicate nouns denoting rank, profession, etc. (Il est un avocat de mérite.)
5. With modified nouns in apposition. (Henri, un avocat de mérite.)
C. Omission
1. With unmodified predicate nouns denoting nationality, rank, etc. (Il est avocat.)
2. With unmodified nouns in apposition. (Henri, avocat)
3. Replaced by le or par in expressions such as the following: deux fois la (par) semaine.
4. Before cent, mille. (Il y a cent hommes.)
5. After quel in exclamations (quel homme!)

III. Partitive Article
A. Inflection—see page 71.
B. Uses
1. To translate English some—any. (Il y a du pain.) (A-t-il des amis?)
2. With a noun having a distinct adjunct. (Du bon papier qu'il a acheté)
3. With a noun modified by following adjective. (Du pain blanc.)
C. Omission (partitive expressed by de alone)

10. These words require de after them. (Spanish omits article before million)

11. Peculiar to the French language.
III. Partitive Article (cont.)
1. Before nouns preceded by adjectives. (de gros livres)
2. After negation. (Il n'a pas de livres.)
3. When the preposition de is essentially a part of the expression. (Un morceau de papier.)

IV. Agreement (of all articles)
All articles must agree in number and gender with all nouns.

V. Repetition
All articles must be repeated before every noun.

German

I. Definite Article
A. Inflection—see page 98.
B. Uses
1. Before names of famous historical or fictional characters. (der Tell)
2. Before names of all countries if modified. (das schöne Deutschland)
3. Feminine names of countries. (die Türkei)
4. With names of mountains. (der Vesuv)
5. With names of the seasons. (der Sommer)
6. With the names of the days of the week. (der Montag)
7. With the names of the months. (der März)

12Exception: article is used if adjective and noun are commonly used together. (des jeunes gens)

13In French, Spanish and English the article does not show case agreement as it does in German. English does not show gender and number agreement as do the other three languages.

14Except when joined by et, in which case may not be repeated before the second noun.

15The names of countries are mainly neuter. 

16The article is omitted in phrases giving the time of the month. (anfang März)
I. Definite Article (cont.)
8. With the names of streets. (die Friedrichstrasse)
9. With names of proper nouns if modified attributively. (der junge Schiller)
10. With abstract nouns. (die Freiheit)
11. With nouns denoting material and class. (das Kupfer)
12. To replace the possessive adjective when the possessor is clearly understood. (Gib mir die (deine) Hände.)
13. To translate English a or per in expressions of price. (Es kostet zwei Mark das Pfund.)
14. In set phrases. (In die Kirche gehen.)
15. Before modified predicate nouns. (Er ist der gute Doktor.)

C. Omission
1. Much as in English except where listed above.
2. In set phrases consisting of two nouns connected by and, if nouns are of the same category. (Stock und Stein)
3. In certain phrases (gegen Osten—nach Suden)
4. Before certain words having technical reference. (gedachter Umstand—the above mentioned circumstance.)
5. Before names of cities.
6. Before unmodified predicate nouns denoting profession. (Er ist Doktor.)

II. Indefinite Article
A. Inflection—see page 98.
B. Uses
1. Corresponds closely to English use of a (an).
2. With abstract nouns. (eine Schönheit)
3. With nouns denoting material. (ein Glas)
4. To translate English one such as before nouns. (ein Schiller—one such as Schiller.)
5. Before verbal nouns for emphasis. (ein Spielen)
6. Before modified predicate nouns. (Er ist ein guter Doktor.)

17This rule is not obligatory, nor is it followed so closely as in French and Spanish.

18Except der Haag.
II. Indefinite Article (cont.)

C. Omission
1. Replaced by definite article to express English a, per, in expressions of price. (Eskostet zwei Mark das Pfund.)
2. With unmodified predicate nouns denoting profession, etc. (Er ist Doktor.)

III. Agreement
The German article agrees in gender, number and case with each noun.

IV. Repetition
The German article must be repeated before each noun.19

Spanish

I. Definite Article
A. Inflection—see page 131.
B. Uses
1. Before certain geographical names. (el Japón)
2. Before abstract nouns. (la verdad)
4. Before the name of a language. (Me gusta el español.)21
5. Before titles in speaking of a person. (El doctor Moreno lo dice.)22
6. To replace the possessive pronoun when the possessor is clearly understood. (Me duele la cabeza.)
7. In time expressions. (hasta el domingo).

19 For exception to this rule see Omission of Definite Article (2) page 131.

20 Usually those countries remote from Spain require the article, those close to Spain do not.

21 After hablar and en the article is omitted with the name of a language. (Hablo español. Dígalo Ud. en español.), but if hablar is modified, the article is used. (Hablo bien el español.) (This use of article with a language corresponds to French usage.)

22 Except—Don, Doña, Santo, Santa, fray.
I. Definite Article (cont.)
8. Before the names of the days of the week.
   (el lunes)
9. Before infinitives used as nouns. (El cantar es agradable.)
10. To replace indefinite article in expressions of price, etc. (dos pesetas la libra.)
11. Before the names of the seasons. (el invierno)
12. Before the names of oceans, rivers, seas. (el Pacifico).
13. Before the names of the four cardinal points. (el sur).
14. Before the names of the months. (el enero).
15. In certain expressions like (nosotros los Americanos).
16. In set phrases—(ir a la ciudad.)
17. Before the names of countries when qualified by an adjective. (la bella Italia).
18. Before proper names when qualified by an adjective. (la pequeña Lolita.)
19. Before modified predicate noun. (Es el buen médico.)
20. With proper names used to express character. (El es el Don Quijote de América.)
21. Before nouns in apposition if the noun is modified by a superlative adjective. (Londres, la ciudad más bella.)

C. Omission
1. Before nouns in apposition. (Londres, capital de Inglaterra)
2. In set phrases. (a esquina de)—on the corner. (en nombre de)—in the name of.
3. Before nouns connected by ni...ni.
4. Before nouns used in indeterminate sense. (No tengo tiempo para hablarle.)
5. In enumerations. (Viejos y niños le interesaban.)

23As in German.
24As in German.
25Unless noun is modified by a superlative-Londres, la ciudad más importante.
I. Definite Article (cont.)
8. In titles of books, articles, etc. (Historia de México.)
9. In many phrases. (con motivo de su mala salud).

II. Indefinite Article
A. Inflection—see page 131.
B. Uses
1. Before a modified predicate noun. (El es un buen médico.)
C. Omission
1. In titles. (Historia de España).
2. With unmodified predicate nouns. (Es médico.)
3. With appositional nouns unless modified by a superlative. (Madrid, ciudad de España).
4. Before ciento, mil, otro, cierto. (Es otra persona.)
5. After qué to express English what a—(¿Qué hombre?)
6. After tener in negative. (No tengo libro.)
7. After tal to express English such as (tal razón!)

III. Neuter Lo
A. Inflection—see page 131.
B. Uses
1. Used only before adjectives, participles, or adjective pronouns to express their value as abstract nouns. (Lo bueno—that which is good)

IV. Agreement
A. Article in Spanish must agree in number and gender with its noun.

V. Repetition
A. Generally the article is repeated before each noun, especially if there is a change in gender.

26 Peculiar to Spanish, French and English languages must form phrases—that which is good; French—ce qui est bon; German uses abstract noun or adjective used as noun—das Güte.)
Comparison and Comment

The French, German and Spanish languages are very similar in the use and omission of the definite and indefinite articles. Certain statements may be made which govern the use and omission of the article in all three of these languages.

A. All use the article before the names of the days of the week. (contrary to English).
   - le lundi
   - der Montag
   - el lunes
   - Monday

B. All use the article before the names of the month. (contrary to English).
   - le mars
   - der März
   - el marzo
   - March

C. All use the article before the names of the seasons.
   - l'été
   - der Sommer
   - el verano
   - Summer

27In English the article may or may not be included. (In Summer or in the summer).

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
D. All use the article before nouns used in a general sense. (contrary to English).

J'etude la musique.
Ich studiere die Musik.
Yo estudio la musica.
I study music.

E. All use the definite article to replace the possessive pronoun when the possessor is clearly understood. (contrary to English).

Il lève la main.
Er hebt die Hand.
El levanta la mano.
He raises his hand.

F. All use the definite article to replace the indefinite article in expressions of price. (contrary to English).

deuX francs la livre
zwei Mark das Pfund
dos pesetas la libra
twenty cents a pound

G. All use the definite article before abstract nouns. (contrary to English).

la vérité
die Wahrheit
la verdad
Truth

H. All use the definite article before modified proper names. (contrary to English).
la petite Marie
die kleine Marie
la pequeña María
little Mary

I. All omit the article (definite and indefinite) before unmodified predicate nouns. In English the article is used.
Il est docteur.
Er ist Arzt.
El es médico.
He is a (the) doctor.

J. The German and English languages use the article before nouns in apposition whether such nouns are modified or not. The French and Spanish languages use the article only if the noun in apposition is modified.
Henri, fils de monsieur le docteur.
Heinrich, der Sohn des Doktors.
Enrique, hijo del doctor.
Henry, the son of the doctor.28

28In English the article may also be omitted.
but

Henri, le meilleur élève de la classe.

Enrique, el mejor estudiante de la clase.

K. In German and English the article is used after what (solch) in exclamations. In French and Spanish after quel and qué, the article is omitted.

Quel homme!

Was für ein Mann!

¡Qué hombre!

What a man!
CHAPTER III

GENDER

English

There are three genders in English—masculine, feminine and neuter, depending upon the sex or lack of sex of the noun. A fourth type—common—is used to denote nouns which may be of either sex (horse—common gender).

I. Rules for Determining Gender
   A. By Meaning
      1. Masculine
         a. Names of male beings. (boy)
      2. Feminine
         a. Names of female beings. (lady)
      3. Neuter
         a. Names of beings and objects having no sex. (box)
      4. Common
         a. Those nouns making no distinction as to sex. (horse)
   B. Gender by Form
      1. Masculine
         a. Nouns ending in suffix or. (actor)
      2. Feminine
         a. Nouns ending in suffix ess. (actress)
   C. Gender by Derivation
      1. Masculine
         a. From the French—beau
         b. Executor
      2. Feminine
         a. From the French—belle
         b. Executrix
   D. Double Gender
      As the other languages, English has many nouns which are used to represent both masculine and feminine gender. Those nouns of common gender might be classified as nouns of double gender.
   E. Compound Nouns
      Follow the rule of sex or lack of sex of the object or person named.
I. Rules for Determining Gender (cont.)
F. Feminine Formed From Masculine
1. Add suffix ess. (actor—actress).
2. As they were in the language from which they were borrowed. (Czar—Czarina, hero—heroine).
G. Formed in Other Ways.
1. By means of a qualifying adjective (male fox—female fox). (Also vixen is feminine from Old English).

French

All French nouns are either masculine or feminine. Those nouns denoting male beings are masculine, those denoting female beings are feminine. Some nouns, denoting persons or animals may have both genders. In such cases the feminine is formed by adding e to the masculine noun unless the masculine form already ends in e, in which case the gender can be shown only through the article.

I. Rules for Determining the Gender of Nouns
A. Gender by Meaning
1. Masculine
   a. Names of male beings are masculine. (un homme).
   b. Most nouns denoting professions. (un auteur).
   c. Names of the winds. (le zephyr).
   d. Names of the four cardinal points. (le sud).
   e. Names of the seasons. (le printemps).
   f. Names of the months. (l'octobre).
   g. Names of the days of the week. (le lundi).

29Except the following which are feminine—la bise, la brise, la mousson, la tramontane.
I. Rules for Determining the Gender of Nouns (cont.)

h. Names of countries not ending in e.
   (Le Chili).

i. Most names of mountains not ending in es.
   (Le Hartz).

j. Most names of rivers not ending in e.
   (Le Rhin).

k. Names of trees and shrubs. (le pommier) 30

l. Names of weights and measures of the metrical system. (le litre).

m. Adjectives used as nouns (le beau—le blanc) 31

n. Names of metals and chemicals (le fer) 32

c. Some names of lower animals exist only in masculine gender. (éléphant) 33

2. Feminine


b. Names of countries ending in e. (la France) 34

c. Names of rivers of France ending in e are feminine. (la Seine).

d. Most names of towns and cities, especially if they end in e. (la Rome) 35

e. Names of holidays. (la Noël).

f. Names of arts, sciences, and trades. (la peinture) 36

The following are feminine—L’aubépine, la bourdaine, la bruyère, l’épine, l’hêble, la ronce, la vigne, la viorne.

Adjectives referring to concrete objects are of the same gender as the noun understood. La belle (as though followed by dame, etc. thus corresponds closely to the German use of adjective used as a noun).

The following are feminine—la fonte, la tôlé).

These words use qualifying adjective to distinguish sex—l’éléphant mâle, l’éléphant femelle—(as in English male and female use with nouns of common gender).

Except le Chili, le Mexique.

Following are masculine—le Caire, le Havre. Any name of a city used as a collective noun is masculine. (Tout Rome le sait.)

Following are feminine—cité, moitié, merci, foi, loi, vertu, eau, peau and most abstracts ending in té, tié, amitié, charité.
I. Rules for Determining Gender of Nouns (cont.)

B. Gender by Form

1. Masculine
   a. Nouns ending in a vowel sound other than 
      mute e. (un opéra)37
   b. Nouns ending in acie, age, asme, èze, ème, 
      isme, tère.38 (le spectacle, le voyage)
   c. Nouns ending in a consonant. (le sol)39

2. Feminine
   a. Nouns ending in e when preceded by a 
      vowel or a double consonant. (une année, 
      la vie, la flamme).
   b. Abstract nouns ending in te or tie. (la 
      liberté, l’amitié).
   c. Nouns ending in ace, ade, ance, ence, 
      ense, ire, oire, ude, ure. (la culture, 
      la salade).
   d. Abstract nouns in eur. (la faveur).
   e. Nouns ending in son, ion. (la chanson, 
      la nation).

C. Gender by Derivation

1. Nouns derived from Latin generally keep the 
   gender which they had in Latin. The Latin 
   masculine and neuters becoming masculine in 
   French and the Latin feminines becoming fem- 
   inine in French. (Masculine—mur; feminine-- 
   justice).

D. Double Gender

1. Some nouns denoting persons (generally end in 
   e) may be either masculine and feminine and 
   take either form of article, depending upon 
   the desired meaning. (un artiste—une artiste).
2. Some nouns having two genders vary in meaning 
   with the gender. (un livre—book; une livre-- 
   pound).

E. Compound Nouns

1. Compound nouns made up of a verb and a noun

37Except le folklore, le drame.

38Following in age are feminine--cage, image, nage, 
   page, rage.

39Following are feminine--clef, nef, soif, faim, 
   façon, fin, leçon, main, raison, mer, and a few others.
I. Rules for Determining Gender of Nouns (cont.)

2. Other compounds take the gender of the noun if there is a noun. (une eau forte).

3. If there are two nouns the gender agrees with the main noun. (une mappe-monde).

F. Formation of the Feminine from Masculine

1. By an entirely different word. (le frère—la soeur) 42

2. By replacing suffix with trice. (l'ambassadeur—l'ambassadrice).

3. Add suffix esse to last consonant. (le comte—la comtesse).


5. Add â. (l'aime—l'ami).

6. Drop final e and change to e before adding â. (le veuf—la veuve).

7. Drop final x and change to e before adding â. (l'époux—l'épouse).

8. Final er becomes ère in feminine. (l'étranger l'étrangère).

G. Formed in Other Ways

1. By means of qualifying adjective for those nouns incapable of changing gender. (l'éléphant mâle—femelle) 43

There are three genders in German, as in English.

They are masculine, feminine, and neuter. These genders are based for the most part according to rules of grammatical gender and not of sex. Masculine may or may not refer to

40 Feminine is—une perce-neige.

41 In German composition word takes gender of last part. This is not true in French since plume is feminine but un porte-plume is masculine.

42 As English.

43 As English.
male beings, etc. (dáš Madchen—girl is a neuter noun.)

I. Rules for Determining Gender
A. Gender by Meaning

1. Masculine nouns
   a. Names of males. (der Mann).
   b. Names of the four cardinal points. (der Nord).
   c. Names of stones. (der Kiesel).
   d. Names of the seasons. (der Frühling).
   e. Names of the months. (der Mai).
   f. Names of non-German rivers. (der Tigris)44

2. Feminine
   a. Names of female beings. (die Frau)45
   b. Most names of trees. (die Eiche).
   c. Most names of rivers in Germany. (die Donau)46
   d. Most names of flowers. (die Rose).
   e. Most abstract terms. (die Macht).
   f. Names of a few countries. (die Türkei)47

3. Neuter
   a. Verbal nouns (formed from infinitive). (das Leben).
   b. Names of animals which designate the young with no reference to sex. (das Pferd)48
   c. Names of cities. (das Paris)49
   d. Names of countries. (das Deutschland)49-50
   e. Most names of materials. (das Salz).

44 Except—die Lena, die Wolga, die Seine which are non-German rivers.
45 Das Madchen, das Fraulein, das Weib.
46 Exceptions—der Rhein, der Neckar, der Main.
47 Exceptions—die Compagnie, die Gascogne, die Krim, die Lousitz, die Levante, die Moldau, die Normandie, der Peloponnes, die Pfalz, die Schweiz, die Türkei, die Walacher.
48 Exceptions—die Maus, die Ratte, die Katze, die Schlange, die Nachtigall.
49 Articles are not used with names of cities and countries unless preceded by adjective.
50 Exceptions—same as footnote 47
I. Rules for Determining Gender (cont.)
   f. Letters of the alphabet.
   g. Names of metals. (das Silber).
B. Gender by Form
   1. Masculine
      a. Most monosyllabic nouns formed from a verbal root and having no suffix. (der Bund)51
      b. Nouns ending in e denoting persons or animals. (der Löwe).
      c. Nouns denoting profession, etc., ending in—er, ler, ner. (der Lehrer, der Bürger).
      d. Nouns ending in en that are not infinitives. (der Garten).
      e. Nouns ending in el denoting instrument. (der Wedel)52
      g. Nouns ending in ling. (der Frühling).
      h. Nouns ending in rich. (der Wüterich).
   2. Feminine
      a. Nouns ending in e. (die Sprache).
      b. Nouns ending in t. (die Kraft).
      c. Nouns ending in ei. (die Malerei).
      d. Nouns ending in erei. (die Malerei).
      e. Nouns ending in heit. (die Schönheit).
      f. Nouns ending in keit. (die Einigkeit).
      g. Nouns ending in ie. (die Partie).
      h. Nouns ending in in. (die Lehrerin).
      i. Nouns ending in schaft. (die Freundschaft)
      j. Nouns ending in ung. (die Warnung).
      k. Nouns ending in age. (die Passage).
      l. Nouns ending in ion. (die Nation).
      m. Nouns ending in ik. (die Musik).
      n. Nouns ending in tat. (die Universität).
   3. Neuter
      a. Nouns ending in chen or lein. (das Mädchen—das Fräulein).

51 Only a few masculine derivatives from verbal nouns are not masculine and these are generally words having double gender with a different meaning for the different genders—das Band-band, der Band-league.

52 Except—die Nadel.
I. Rules for Determining Gender (cont.)
   b. Most nouns ending in sal. (das Schicksal)53
   c. Most nouns ending in nis. (das Erlebnis)54
   d. Most nouns ending in tum. (das Wachstum)55
   e. Most nouns of collective meaning beginning with suffix Ge and ending in e. (das Gebirge).

C. Gender by Derivation
   1. Generally keep the gender which they had in the original language, unless they correspond similarly in meaning to German words, in which case they may change in gender to accord with the gender of the native German word.

D. Double Gender
   1. Some nouns using different gender change meaning. (das Band-band; der Band-volume).
   2. Some nouns have two genders with no change of meaning.
   3. Change of form and gender but same meaning. (der Backen-die Backe-cheek).

E. Compound Nouns
   1. Usually compound nouns take the gender of the final noun. (der Geburtstag)56
   2. Compound names of places are neuter regardless of the gender of the final noun. (das Freiberg).

F. Formed from Masculine
   1. Names of professions may add in to form the feminine. (der Lehrer—die Lehrerin).

G. Formed Other Ways
   1. By qualifying appositional noun. (Männchen, Weibchen)57

---

53Feminine exception—die Drangsal, die Mühsal.
54Feminine Exception—die Wildnis, die Besorgnis.
55Masculine exceptions—der Irrtum, der Reichtum.
56Exceptions: die Antwort (wort is neuter word), der Abscheu, der Mittwoch, die Wehmut, etc.
57German has no adjective comparable to English male and female; French—mâle and femelle, Spanish—macho and hembra.
Every noun in Spanish is either masculine or feminine in gender, whether the noun denotes animate or inanimate objects or an abstract idea. Neuter gender occurs but only in pronoun, adjectives and participles.

I. Rules for Determining Gender

A. By Meaning

1. Masculine
   a. Names of male beings. (el hombre).
   b. Names of large and well-known animals. (el caballo)
   c. Names of countries unless end in a. (el Peru)
   d. Names of most rivers. (el Sena)
   e. Names of mountains. (Los Andes).
   g. Names of some cities ending in masculine terminations. (el Jerez)
   h. Infinitives used as nouns. (el cantar).
   i. Indeclinable parts of speech used as nouns. (el pro y el contra)
   j. Names of the four cardinal points. (el sur)
   k. Names of the seasons. (el invierno)
   l. Names of the days of the week. (el lunes)
   m. Names of the months. (el julio).

2. Feminine
   b. Names of most cities regardless of ending. (La Toledo, la Seville)

---

58 For use and omission of definite article with names of countries, see page 33.

59 Names of rivers are masculine even when ending in a.

60 Most names of cities are feminine regardless of ending (la Toledo) but all cities when used as indicating the inhabitants are masculine gender.

61 Contra, though ending in a is masculine.

62 Exception: La primavera.

63 When names of cities are used to designate the inhabitants, they are always masculine.
I. Rules for Determining Gender (cont.)

c. Names of the letters of the alphabet.
   (la a).

B. By Form

1. Masculine
   a. Nouns ending in a. (el banco)\(^{64}\)
   b. Nouns of Greek origin ending in ma.
      (el programa).
   c. Most nouns ending in consonants. (el huésped)\(^{65}\)

2. Feminine
   a. Nouns ending in a. (la silla)\(^{66}\)
   b. Nouns ending in dad. (la verdad).
   c. Nouns ending in tud. (la virtud).
   d. Nouns ending in ion. (la nación)\(^{67}\)
   e. Nouns ending in umbre. (la pesadumbre).
   f. Nouns ending in le. (la serie).
   g. Nouns ending in tad. (la majestad).
   h. Nouns ending in sis. (la crisis).

C. By Derivation

1. Nouns of Greek origin ending in ma are masculine. (el programa).

D. Nouns of Double Gender

1. Those nouns used in one gender with no change in form to designate both sexes. (la zorra).
2. Some feminine nouns ending in a. Denoting things may take either article (el--la) according to sex. (el ayuda--aide) (la ayuda--aid).
3. Other words have change of meaning to correspond to gender changes. (el cometa--comet; la cometa--kite; el corte--cut; la corte--court).
4. Some nouns change gender but not meaning.
   (el cutis--la cutis, skin; el mar--la mar, sea).

\(^{64}\)Except la mano, la radio, la nado and a few others.

\(^{65}\)Nouns ending in dad, tad, tud are feminine.

\(^{66}\)Except el día, el cometa, el mapa, and many others; also words of Greek origin ending in ma.

\(^{67}\)Except el camión.
I. Rules for Determining Gender (cont.)
E. Compound Nouns
1. Denoting males are masculine. (el limpia-
botas).
2. Denoting female are feminine.
3. Most are masculine.
4. Irregular in gender. It is best to learn
article as the word is learned.
F. Formed from Masculine
1. Nouns ending in a remain unchanged but change
article to designate desired sex. (el artista--la artista).
2. Masculine nouns ending in e change e to a
for the feminine. (el elefante--la elefanta).
3. Masculine nouns ending in d, l, r, s, z, add a.
   (el huésped--la huéspeda, el colegial--
   la colegiala, el león--la leona, el autor--
   la autora, el doctor--la doctora, el marqués--
   la marquesa).
4. Some nouns add esa to stem of masculine noun.
   (el conde--la condesa).
5. Some nouns add isa to masculine stem. (el
   poeta--la poetisa).
6. Many nouns remain the same, merely changing
   article. (el joven, la joven).
7. Many nouns change entirely. (el hombre--
   la mujer).
8. Nouns ending in o in masculine change o to a
   for the feminine. (el niño--la niña).
G. Formed Other Ways
1. By complete change of noun. (el hombre--la
   mujer).
2. By merely changing article. (el joven--la
   joven).
3. By qualifying adjective macho and hembra.
   (Both adjectives are invariable as to gender.)
   (el coyote hembra--el coyote macho).

---

63Most compound nouns in Spanish are formed by the
joining of the third person singular, present tense of the
verb, plus a plural noun. (el salvavidas--lifesaver).

69Some masculine nouns merely change article and keep
the e in feminine. (el tigre--la tigre).

70Exception: el abad--la abadesa.
II. Neuter Gender (Pronouns, Adjectives, and Participles)

A. For neuter article lo, see inflection, page 131, and the article, page 34.

B. Demonstrative pronouns: esto, eso, aquello.

C. Personal pronoun: ello.

D. The neuter pronouns in Spanish do not refer to single words but to thoughts, statements, ideas, etc. (Ello es que—the fact is.)

E. Ello may refer to infinitive. (Tratabamos a partir pero encontramos con dificultades en ello y tuvimos que diferirlo.)

Comparison and Comment

From the foregoing grammatical abstracts of the gender of those languages being considered, it is easy to see that the English language has the simplest as well as the most logical system for determining the gender of nouns. It is a system for determining the gender, based upon the sex or lack of sex of the object concerned, with few or no deviations except in cases where a sexless object is being personified, (as in referring to a ship as she). The Spanish language perhaps has the next easiest system for the determination of the gender of nouns. While there are only two genders for nouns, masculine and feminine, no great difficulty is presented since all male beings are masculine gender, all female beings are feminine gender, and those nouns having no sex may be learned with facility if one adheres to a few well-learned rules concerning the gender of nouns with certain suffixes.
The French gender is not too difficult to understand and learn since the rules for its determination are followed rather closely in practice and offer no real difficulties.

It is the German system of gender which is most difficult to master, since here no strict attention is paid to actual sex. Das Kind (child) and das Mädchen (girl) certainly are nouns which refer to beings having sex; however, in German they are treated as being of neuter gender. Das Kind could be construed as being of common gender, with no special reference given to sex. But this reasoning will not apply to das Mädchen or das Fräulein, both meaning girl and both definitely referring to sex and yet both being of neuter gender. The only grammatical rule that may be applied here is the rule stating that words having the suffix chen or lein are neuter gender; but it is rather confusing to refer to a girl as it. Give it to her. (the girl). Gib es ihm. (das Mädchen), a feminine being but a neuter pronoun.

Certain comparisons can be made among these languages.

1. There are only two genders for nouns in Spanish and French. They are masculine and feminine.71

2. There are three genders for nouns in English and German. They are masculine, feminine and neuter.

---

71 Spanish has a neuter gender for pronouns--10.
3. In all languages nouns denoting male beings are masculine; those denoting female beings are feminine.\(^{72}\)

4. Borrowed words of the various languages generally retain the gender which they had in their original language.\(^{73}\)

5. Points of the compass are masculine in French, German and Spanish. (le sud, der Sudan, el sur)\(^{74}\)

6. The names of the seasons are masculine in French, German and Spanish. (l'été, der Sommer, el verano)

7. Names of the days of the week are masculine in French, German and Spanish. (le lundi, der Montag, el lunes).

8. Names of the months are masculine in French, German and Spanish.

9. Names of most of the trees are masculine in Spanish and French, but in German are mostly feminine. (le chêne, die Eiche, el roble).

10. Names of rivers in Spanish are all masculine. Names of rivers in French, not ending in e, are masculine; those ending in e are feminine.\(^{75}\) Names of rivers in Germany are mostly feminine, those outside of Germany are mostly masculine, in German. (le Rhin—la Seine, die Donau—der Tigris, el Sena).

11. Names of mountains are masculine in French, Spanish and German. (le Hartz, der Harz, el Hartz)\(^{76}\)

---

\(^{72}\) Cf. das Mädchen and das Fräulein in German.

\(^{73}\) Cf. German words of foreign origin which, due to a resemblance to some noun already existing in German, have changed gender to correspond more closely to the German word.

\(^{74}\) Except la primavera in Spanish.

\(^{75}\) Except Le Rhone, le Danube.

\(^{76}\) Except in French when end in es, then are feminine.
All of the languages have similar methods for changing the gender of nouns.

1. By adding suffix to existing masculine form. (all languages).

   actor—actress
   le comte—la comtesse
   Lehrer—die Lehrerin
   el poeta—la poetisa

2. All languages may denote the sex of the noun in question by using equivalent terms to translate the English male, female. (French—mâle, femelle; Spanish—macho, hembra; German—Männchen, Weibsch.) It is interesting to note that these words are adjectives in English, French and Spanish, but in German they are nouns and as such must be used in apposition.

   un lièvre mâle, un lièvre femelle
   la liebre macho, la liebre hembra
   the male hare, the female hare.

   but
   der Hase, ein Männchen
   der Hase, ein Weibsch

3. In French and Spanish a noun's gender may be changed by merely changing the final vowel or by adding a vowel.

   l'amí—l'amie
   el amigo—la amiga

---

77 Note that the use of these modifiers does not change the grammatical gender of the noun.

78 Spanish macho and hembra are invariable.
### CHAPTER IV

#### INFLECTION

**English Chart**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person</td>
<td>First</td>
<td>Second</td>
<td>Third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>Objective</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Substantives** (Nouns and pronouns)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives and Adverbs</th>
<th>Comparison</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive degree</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Verb agrees with Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Person</td>
<td>First</td>
<td>Second</td>
<td>Third</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Simple</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compound</td>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. Inflection shown by preposition not by case endings except for personal pronouns.
### English Chart (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Compound Tenses</th>
<th>Mood</th>
<th>Voice</th>
<th>Infinitives</th>
<th>Participles</th>
<th>Auxiliaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>Indicative - All tenses</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>Imperative - Present tense</td>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>Subjunctive - Present, Past,</td>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conditional Perfect</td>
<td>Present Perfect, Past Perfect</td>
<td>Reciprocal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Progressive Perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Emphatic Tenses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### French Chart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Article (definite, indefinite, partitive)</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Agree with word modified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Genitive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*2 Inflection shown by prepositions not by case endings except in personal pronouns.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>French Chart (cont.)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Substantives</td>
<td>Person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Nouns and pronouns)</td>
<td>First</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second familial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular noun or pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>Agree with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>Comparative degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Superlative degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>Positive degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Comparative degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Superlative degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person</td>
<td>Verb agrees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second familiar subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Past absolute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conditional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Preterit Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound</td>
<td>Compound Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compound Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Definite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conditional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
French Chart (cont.,)

Verb

Mood

Indicative - All tenses
Subjunctive - Present, Imperfect, Present
Imperative - Present tense

Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect,

Imperative - Present tense

Voice

Active
Passive
Reflexive
Reciprocal

Gender
Masculine
Feminine
Agreement

Infinitive
Participles
Number
Singular
Plural

Auxiliaries

German Chart

Gender
Masculine
Feminine
Neuter

Agreement with subject

Number
Singular
Plural

word

Case
Nominative
Genitive
Dative
Accusative

modified

Gender
Masculine
Feminine
Neuter

Substantive
(Noun and pronoun)

Number
Singular
Plural

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
# German Chart (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substantive (Noun and pronoun)</th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>First</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Second familiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Second formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Accusative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Agree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Accusative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributive Adjective</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>Positive degree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Comparative degree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Superlative degree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predicate Adjective and Adverb</td>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>Positive degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Comparative degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superlative degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Agree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>First</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second familiar</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second formal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Third</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compound</td>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conditional</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
German Chart (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Compound Tenses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conditional Perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mood</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Future Tenses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Voice

- Active
- Passive
- Reflexive
- Reciprocal

Infinitive

- Gender: Masculine
- Feminine
- Neuter

- Agree when
- adjectives used
- nominative attributively
- genitive
- dative
- accusative

Participles

- Number: Singular
- Plural

Auxiliaries

Spanish Chart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Article (Definite and indefinite)</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Agree with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Agree with word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Agree with modified word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spanish Chart (cont.)</td>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Noun and pronoun)</td>
<td>Person</td>
<td>First</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td></td>
<td>Positive degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>Comparison</td>
<td>Positive degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person</td>
<td></td>
<td>First</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Inflection shown by prepositions not by case endings except in personal pronouns.
Spanish Chart (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Conditional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simple</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td>Preterit perfect</td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>Conditional perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compound</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Progressive tenses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indicative - All tenses</th>
<th>Subjunctive - All tenses except two conditional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voice</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Passive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitives</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Past Participle agrees with subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>voice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliaries</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

I. Article

A. Definite
   1. Declension. the is invariable.

B. Indefinite
   1. Declension. a - an - varies only if following word beginning with a vowel. No inflection for gender, number and case.
II. Substantives

A. Pronouns

1. Personal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd masc.</th>
<th>3rd fem.</th>
<th>3rd neu.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>of me</td>
<td>of you</td>
<td>of him</td>
<td>of her</td>
<td>of it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>to me</td>
<td>to you</td>
<td>to him</td>
<td>to her</td>
<td>to it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Demonstratives

a. Uninflected except for plural forms.
   - this - these
   - that - those

3. Interrogative

a. Who - which - that
b. Only who is inflected
   - who - nominative
   - whose - genitive
   - to whom - dative
   - whom - accusative

Singular and plural

4. Indefinite

a. All indefinite pronouns remain invariable except other and one which have a genitive and plural nominative form.
   - one - one's - ones
   - other - other's - others

5. Relative

a. Who - which - that
b. Only who is inflected

4 Due to common usage many grammarians now accept who as being used objectively, except after a preposition when whom must be used. (Living English by McKnight, Haber and Hatfield, page 211.)

5 Compounds of one (someone, etc.) also have this inflection.

6 Which may be inflected in the genitive by borrowing the form whose but most grammarians prefer of which.
II. Substantives (cont.)

who - nominative
whose - genitive Singular

who - nominative
whom - dative and plural

6. Possessive

a. Are invariable except for person and number

mine ours
yours yours
his, hers, its theirs

7. Reflexive pronouns

myself ourselves
yourself yourselves
himself themselves
herself themselves
itself themselves

8. Reciprocal pronouns

a. See reflexive pronouns
b. Each other. In genitive - each other's
c. One another. In genitive - one another's

B. Noun

1. Inflection as to Gender (see also Gender).

a. The word may entirely change

boy - girl
b. Addition of suffix ess to masculine form to form the feminine

actor - actress
c. Borrowing from foreign languages

hero - heroine

2. Inflection as to Number

a. Most nouns add s or es to the singular form of the noun to form the plural. The es is used when the singular form ends in a sibilant (ch, s, ss, sh, x, z).

boy - boys
church - churches

b. Some words ending in y may simply add s to form the plural

boy - boys

Others may change the y to ie and add s.

city - cities
II. Substantives (cont.)

c. Words ending in o either add a or es to form the plural. The practice is about equally divided.

d. Words ending in f or fe may change the f to v and add s, for forming the plural.
   knife - knives
   Other words in the same endings may merely add s.
   safe - safes

e. Compound nouns generally form the plural by adding a or es to the final noun.
   maidservant - maidservants
   However, some compound nouns add the plural ending to the first noun.
   son-in-law - sons-in-law
   In a few compound nouns both components receive plural ending.
   man-servant - men-servants
   Here, however, men could be construed as an adjectival noun to denote the sex of the servant, but it is not the rule for adjectives to agree in number with their nouns.

f. Foreign plurals. Many foreign words form their plurals as they did in their original language.
   beau - beaux

3. Inflection as to Case
a. Only one case shows inflection in English.
   Genitive - boy, boy's
b. Compound nouns form their genitive by adding the s to the last part of the word.
   son-in-law's

---

7 Modern usage tends to use English plurals in such cases (beau - beaus).

8 This inflection of genitive case may be dispensed with if the preposition of is used.
II. Substantives (cont.)

4. Formation of Nouns
   a. Infinitives may be used as nouns.
      To give is true pleasure
   b. Adjectives may be used as nouns.
      Blue is my favorite color
   c. Participles may be used as nouns.
      Walking is good exercise
   d. Addition of ness to other parts of speech.
      swift - swiftness

5. Diminutives
   a. Addition of kin
      lamb - lambkin
   b. Addition of ie
      dog - doggie

III. Adjectives

A. Gender inflection
   1. Adjectives remain invariable for gender.

B. Number
   1. Descriptive adjectives remain invariable for number

C. Case
   1. Adjectives remain invariable for case.

D. Demonstrative adjectives
   1. Inflected only as to number
      this - these
      that - those

E. Possessive adjectives

   Singular                              Plural
   1st       my                        our
   2nd       your                      your
   3rd masc. his                       their
   3rd fem.  hers                      their
   3rd neu.  its                       their

F. Indefinite adjectives
   some
   other
   all
   every
   each

---

9 Agrees in person and number and gender with the possessor.
III. Adjectives (cont.)

G. Interrogative adjectives
   which - invariable
   what - invariable

H. Degrees
   1. Comparative
      a. Is formed by the addition of suffix
         er to positive form.
         pretty - prettier
   2. Superlative
      a. Is formed by the addition of suffix
         est to positive form.
         pretty - prettiest
   3. Irregular comparisons
      good - better - best
   4. Substitutes for
      a. Use of more and most, less and least,
         as... as.
      b. Use of superlative words such as
         very, extremely, etc.

I. Numerals
   1. Cardinal - invariable
   2. Ordinal - invariable

J. Formation of adjectives
   1. Nouns used as adjectives.
      man-servant
   2. Participles used as adjectives.
      the smiling child

IV. Adverbs

A. Degrees
   1. Comparative
      a. Formed by adding er to positive form
         fast - faster
   2. Superlative
      a. Formed by adding est to positive form
         fast - fastest
   3. Irregular comparisons
      well - better - best
   4. Substitutes for
      a. Use of superlative modifies
         very - extremely, etc.

B. Formation of Adverbs
   1. Add ly to adjective
      loud - loudly
V. Verb

Verbs are said to agree with their subjects in person and number. This agreement is difficult to perceive in English, since, throughout the present tense of the verb only one change in form occurs (The _ of the third person singular).

A. Principal parts
1. Infinitive - (to) live
2. Past tense - lived
3. Past participle - lived
4. Present participle - living

B. Formation of tenses from principal parts
1. Infinitive - present tense
   - future tense
   - conditional tense
   - imperative
2. Past tense - past tense
3. Past participle - perfect tenses
4. Present participle - progressive tenses

C. Number of conjugations (two)\(^\text{10}\)
1. Weak verbs
   live - lived - lived
2. Strong verbs
   give - gave - given

D. Weak conjugation
1. Formation of principal parts
   a. Infinitive is itself
   b. Past tense - suffix _ed to infinitive stem
   c. Past participle - suffix _ed to infinitive stem
   d. Present participle - suffix _ing to infinitive stem
2. Indicative tenses
   a. Present tense - to infinitive add following endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{10}\) As in German, English has two conjugations - the weak formed by using _ed in past tense and past participle and the strong, which changes vowel in past tense and may change in past participle. As in German, there is not means for determining the infinitive to which conjugation a verb belongs.
V. Verb (cont.)

b. Past tense - to infinitive add following endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>(e)d</td>
<td>(e)d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>(e)d</td>
<td>(e)d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>(e)d</td>
<td>(e)d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Future tense - conjugated form of will in present tense plus infinitive
   He will go, etc.

d. Conditional tense - formed by conjugating would plus infinitive of the verb in question
   I should go, you would go, etc.

e. Perfect tenses
   (1) Formed by the conjugated form of have in corresponding tense
       (present for present perfect, past for pluperfect), plus the past participle of the verb in question
       I have gone
   (2) Future and conditional perfect
       - formed by conjugated forms of will and would plus perfect infinitive
       I shall have gone, etc.

f. Progressive tense - formed by conjugating be in corresponding tense plus present participle of the verb in question
   I am going - present tense
   I was going - past
   I shall be going - future
   I should be going - conditional
   I shall have been going, etc.

g. Emphatic form - formed by conjugating do in corresponding tense plus infinitive of the verb in question
   I do go, I did go, etc.

E. Strong conjugations

   1. Formation of principal parts
      a. Infinitive is itself
      b. Past tense - change of vowel
V. Verb (cont.)

   c. Past participle may or may not change vowel. 11
   d. Present participle - adding to infinitive stem.

2. Indicative tenses
   a. Present - same as for weak verbs
   b. Past - change of vowel. No endings
   c. Other tenses - same as weak verbs

F. Subjunctive mood

   Since the subjunctive mood has diminished so in usage, it is impossible to list conjugational inflection for verbs in the subjunctive mood. Certain forms, however, still do occur in purist English which distinguish the subjunctive from the indicative.

   1. Use of were to replace was in referring to present time subjective.
      If I were you, I should go

   2. Be replaces is.
      Though it be difficult, he will succeed.

   3. The third person singular, losing the s of the indicative in present time.
      Though he attempt it, he will not succeed.
      Long live the king!

G. Imperative

   1. Formed exactly like the second person of the present indicative.

H. Passive

   1. Formed by the conjugated form of to be in the desired tense plus the past participle of the verb in question.

I. Reflexive verbs

   1. The regular verb form corresponding to the subject and desired tense plus the inclusion of one of the reflexive pronouns (corresponding to the subject of the verb).

      11. May be used like past tense. May have en ending (give - gave - given). May be like present infinitive (come - came - come). May be entirely different (drink - drank - drunk).

      12. In practically all cases the subjunctive mood in English is designated by the use of may and might. (Though it may be difficult . . .; though he may attempt it . . .)
V. Verb (cont).

J. Reciprocal verbs
1. Same as reflexive, except for accompanying pronoun which may be one another, each other, etc., or a plural form of one of the reflexive pronouns.

K. Irregular verbs
1. In English, irregular verbs are too numerous to include in a paper of this sort. It is interesting to note, however, that irregular verbs in other languages are also frequently to be found in English. To be, to go, to have, etc., are irregular in all languages.
2. English irregular weak verbs correspond closely to German irregular weak verbs.
   bring - brought - brought
   bringen - brachte - gebracht

L. Impersonal verbs
1. As in other languages, verbs denoting natural phenomena (to rain) can be conjugated in any tense but only in the third person singular form with the indefinite it as subject.
2. Whereas in other languages there is, there are, is always singular (Spanish, hay; French, il y a; German, es gibt), in English there is the plural form, there are.
3. To be, conjugated in the third person in any tense may be used with adjectives to denote impersonal meaning.
   It is necessary, etc.
4. To be, conjugated with it in any tense denotes time.
   It was two o'clock.
5. Most verbs in English may be used impersonally.

M. Past participle
1. As verb form is invariable.

N. Present participle
1. Is invariable.

O. Compound verbs
1. As in other languages, prefixes are added to already existing verbs to form other verbs - turn, return.

13 German also has plural for es ist - es sind.
### French

#### I. Article

A. **Definite**

1. **Declension**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td>le, l'14</td>
<td>les</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
<td>la, l'14</td>
<td>les</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Contractions with prepositions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(à + le) au</td>
<td>(à + les) aux</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(de + le) du</td>
<td>(de + les) des</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. **The indefinite article.**

1. **Declension**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td>un</td>
<td>(des)16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
<td>une</td>
<td>(des)16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Contraction**

- Occurs only with de before a vowel and then it is the preposition which contracts.
  - d'un, d'une

C. **Partitive article.**

1. **Declension**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td>du 18</td>
<td>des</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
<td>de la 18</td>
<td>des</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **The partitive article is replaced by de alone if the noun it modifies is preceded by an adjective.**

---

1. l' is used before nouns beginning with a vowel or a mute h.

2. The feminine article never contracts with prepositions. de and à are only prepositions definite article contracts with.

3. Un actually has no plural. des means some.

4. Used only in the affirmative.

5. De l' replaces du and de la before a singular masculine or feminine noun beginning in a vowel or a mute h.

6. Except in cases where the adjective and noun have been used together so commonly that they are regarded as a single unit (des bons mots).
II. Substantives

A. Pronouns

1. Personal

(a) Conjunctive personal pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd fam.</th>
<th>2nd form.</th>
<th>3rd masc.</th>
<th>3rd fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>je</td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>vous</td>
<td>il</td>
<td>elle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>en</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>vous</td>
<td>lui, y</td>
<td>lui, y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>vous</td>
<td>le</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

| Nom.   | nous      | vous     | ils       | elles     |
| Gen.   | en        | en       |           |          |
| Dat.   | nous      | vous     | leur, y   | leur, y   |
| Acc.   | nous      | vous     | les       | les       |

(b) Disjunctive personal pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd fam.</th>
<th>2nd form.</th>
<th>3rd masc.</th>
<th>3rd fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>moi</td>
<td>toi</td>
<td>vous</td>
<td>lui</td>
<td>elle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>de moi</td>
<td>de toi</td>
<td>de vous</td>
<td>de lui</td>
<td>d'elle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>à moi</td>
<td>à toi</td>
<td>à vous</td>
<td>à lui</td>
<td>à elle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>moi</td>
<td>toi</td>
<td>vous</td>
<td>lui</td>
<td>elle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

| Nom.   | nous      | vous     | eux       | elles     |
| Gen.   | de nous   | de vous  | de vous   | d'eux     | d'elles  |
| Dat.   | à nous    | à vous   | à vous    | à eux     | à elles  |
| Acc.   | nous      | vous     | eux       | elles     |

(c) ce

- Invariable as to number and gender. Does become c' before a verb beginning with a vowel.

2. Demonstrative pronouns

(a) Singular

| Masc. | celui     |
| Fem.  | celle     |

Plural

|       | ceux      |
|       | celles    |

---

20 Disjunctive personal pronouns replace conjunctive when, (1) used absolutely (qui est là, Moi), (2) after prepositions (avec lui), (3) as subject after ce and être (c'est moi).

21 ce is used in place of il as subject when no person or definite thing is indicated. Il is used in impersonal constructions.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(b) Ce, ceci, cela\textsuperscript{22} - invariable except for ce which becomes c' before vowel.

3. Interrogative pronouns
   (a) Qui form - no distinction for gender and number, only case.
   
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>de qui, de quoi</td>
<td>de laquelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>à qui, à quoi</td>
<td>à laquelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>qui, que</td>
<td>qui, que</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Periphrastic forms of qui.
   
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>qui, qui est-ce qui?</td>
<td>qui, qui est-ce qui?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>qui, qui est-ce qui?</td>
<td>qui, qui est-ce qui?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horn.</td>
<td>qui, qui est-ce qui?</td>
<td>qui est-ce qui?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>que, qu'est-ce que?</td>
<td>que, qu'est-ce que?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   (Refer to persons)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>lequel</td>
<td>laquelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>duquel</td>
<td>de laquelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>auquel</td>
<td>a laquelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>lequel</td>
<td>laquelle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>lesquels</td>
<td>lesquelles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>desquels</td>
<td>desquelles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>auxquels</td>
<td>auxquelles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>lesquels</td>
<td>lesquelles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Indefinite pronouns - are inflected only as to number and gender.
   (a) Aucun - no one, none

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sgl.</td>
<td>aucun</td>
<td>aucune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>aucuns</td>
<td>aucunes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{22} ce is often followed by a relative to form ce qui (that which).

\textsuperscript{23} Two forms are given. The first form refers to persons, the second form to things.

\textsuperscript{24} The only way to express English what? in nominative case.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(b) Autre - other25.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>l'autre</td>
<td>les autres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>l'autre</td>
<td>les autres</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Autrui - others - invariable.
(d) Chacun - each - no plural.

Masculine - chacun
Feminine - chacune

(e) Nul - no one

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>nul</td>
<td>nuls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>nulle</td>
<td>nulles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(f) On - one - invariable.

(g) Personne - no one - invariable.

(h) Rien - nothing - invariable.

(i) Quel qu'un - someone, a few.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>quelqu'un</td>
<td>quelques uns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>quelqu'une</td>
<td>quelques unes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(j) Tout - everyone - all

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>tout</td>
<td>tous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>toute</td>
<td>toutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(k) Tel - such a

Masculine - tel
Feminine - telle


(a) Qui form - invariable in gender and number.

Nominative - qui
Genitive - dont, de qui
Dative - à qui
Accusative - que

(b) Lequel form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>lequel</td>
<td>laquelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>duquel</td>
<td>de laquelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>auquel</td>
<td>a laquelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>lequel</td>
<td>laquelle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25 Autre itself is invariable as to gender, but is usually preceded by article which shows gender.
26 Relative adverbs d'où and où are invariable.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(b) Lequel form (cont.)

| Nominative | lesquels | lesquelles |
| Genitive   | desquels | desquelles |
| Datitive   | auxquels | auxquelles |
| Accusative | lesquels | lesquelles |

(c) Compound relative pronoun - invariable in gender and number.

- Nominative - ce qui
- Genitive - ce dont, ce de quoi
- Dative - ce à quoi
- Accusative - ce que

6. Possessive pronouns.

(a) Table of -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le mien</td>
<td>la mienne</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le tien</td>
<td>la tienne</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le sien</td>
<td>la sienne</td>
<td>his, hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le nôtre</td>
<td>la nôtre</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le vôtre</td>
<td>la vôtre</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le leur</td>
<td>la leur</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les miens</td>
<td>les miennes</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les tiens</td>
<td>les tiennes</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les siens</td>
<td>les siennes</td>
<td>his, hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les nôtres</td>
<td>les nôtres</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les vôtres</td>
<td>les vôtres</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>les leurs</td>
<td>les leurs</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Declension of as to case - all the above are declined as follows -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>le mien</td>
<td>la mienne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>du mien</td>
<td>de la mienne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>au mien</td>
<td>à la mienne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>le mien</td>
<td>la mienne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

27 Unlike English but like Spanish and German, the possessive pronoun in French agrees in person only with the possessor. Its gender and number depend upon the object possessed.

28 Since le sien and its forms mean both his and her, for clarity the phrase de lui, d'elle may be substituted.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(b) Declension of as to case (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>les miens</td>
<td>les miennes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>des miens</td>
<td>des miennes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aux miens</td>
<td>aux miennes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>les miens</td>
<td>les miennes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Reflexive pronouns
me
se
Invariable.

nous
vous
se

8. Reciprocal pronouns
se - vous - nous, invariable.
l'un (l'une) - l'autre, one another.

B. Noun
1. Inflection as to gender.
(a) Except in certain cases where the suffix shows the gender, the article is the main designator of the gender.
(b) In many cases, as in English and the other languages, the feminine equivalent to a masculine noun is a different word
le roi - la reine
(c) As in English and Spanish, a modifier may be used to designate the sex, but the gender of the noun itself remains unchanged
le renard mâle - le renard femelle
(d) Mute e may be added to the masculine noun to form the feminine equivalent.
le voisin - la voisine
(e) Grave accent and e may be added to masculine nouns ending in er, ier to form the feminine.
le boulanger - la boulangère

---
29 Masculine nouns ending in n or t double this consonant before adding e (l'Italien - l'Italienne).
II. Substantives (cont.)

(f) Masculine nouns ending in _f_ form the feminine by changing _f_ to _v_ and adding _e_.
   le veuf - la veuve

(g) Masculine nouns already ending in mute _e_ add _sse_ for the feminine.30
   le prince - la princesse

(h) Masculine nouns ending in _eur_ and derived from past participles of verbs change _eur_ to _euse_ for the feminine.31
   le danseur - la danseuse

(i) Masculine nouns ending in _eur_ (which correspond to Latin _or_), change _eur_ to _rice_.32
   l'acteur - l'actrice

(j) Certain names of professions apply to both men and women but retain the masculine form.
   le poète

(k) Many feminine nouns add _ine_ to the masculine.
   le tsar - la tsarine

2. Inflection as to number.
   (a) Most nouns form their plural by adding _s_ to the singular.
      l'ami - les amis

   (b) Nouns ending in a sibilant (_s, x, z_)
      remain unchanged.
      le fils - les fils

   (c) Nouns ending in _eu, eau_, add _x_ to form the plural
      le chapeau - les chapeaux

   (d) Nouns ending in _ou_ regularly add _a_.33
      le sou - les sous.

---

30 Cf. le duc - la duchesse.
31 Exceptions: le vengeur - la vengeresse; le pêcheur - la pêcheresse.
32 Cf. l'empereur - l'imperatrice.
33 There are seven exceptions: bijou - bijoux; cail­
lou - cialloux; chou - choux; genou - genoux; hibou - hiboux;
joujou - joujoux.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(e) Nouns ending in al in the singular change al to aux in the plural.
   - le cheval - les chevaux

(f) Nouns ending in ail add s.
   - le detail - les details

(g) Some nouns have two plurals with different meaning for each form
   (1) l'aieul - grandfather
       - les aieux - ancestors
   (2) le ciel - sky
       - les cieux - heavens
   (3) l'oeil - eye
       - les yeux - eyes
       - les yeux de boeuf - windows

(h) Compound nouns
   (1) If two words are written as one, s is added to end of word for plural.
       - le passeport - les passeports
   (2) If compound word is composed of two nouns, both parts take plural ending.
       - le chou-fleur - les choux-fleurs
   (3) If compound noun is composed of a noun and an adjective, both take the plural ending.
       - le grand-père - les grands-pères

34 A few keep al and add s: le carnaval - les carnavals.

35 A few change ail to aux: le travail - les travaux.

36 Exceptions: monsieur - messieurs, madame - messames, mademoiselle - mesdames, bonhomme - bonshommes, gentilhomme - gentilshommes (The first three of these are composed of possessive adjective and noun and possessive adjectives agree in number. The last two are adjectives and nouns and adjectives agree with nouns).

37 Exceptions: la grand'mère - les grand'mères, la grand'rue - les grand'rues, la grand'taute - les grand'tautes (here adjective does not take ending due to the apostrophe).
II. Substantives (cont.)

(4) If compound word is composed of a noun and a verb, only noun takes plural ending.
   le porte-plume – les porte-plumes

(5) If the compound word is composed of two nouns and a preposition, only first noun has plural ending.
   le chef-d’œuvre – les chefs d’œuvre

(6) If the compound word is composed of a noun and an invariable part of speech, the noun receives the plural ending.
   l’avant-coureur – les avant-coureurs

(7) Compound words with demi, demi is invariable.
   les demi-heures

(8) Compound nouns with garde, both parts take plural ending when denoting persons.
   les gardes-malades
   But when denoting things, garde is invariable.
   les garde-robos

3. Inflection as to case. 38

   French nouns are invariable with reference to case. The genitive, dative cases are shown by prepositions (de and à).

4. Formation of nouns
   (a) Compound nouns
      (1) Stem of verb plus noun. 39
          portemanteau
      (2) Adjective plus noun.
          gentilhomme
      (3) Two nouns.
          choufleur
      (4) Two nouns and preposition.
          arc-en-ciel

38 As in Spanish and English.

39 As in Spanish.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(5) Compounds of various parts of speech.

le-passe-partout

(b) Infinitives may be used as nouns with no change in form.

5. Diminutive endings.

(a) aud (lourd - lourdaud), derogatory
(b) eau (lion - lionceau), small
(c) et (ette) (mantel - mantelet), small
(d) ille (flotte - flottille), small
(e) in (ine) (serpent - serpentin), small
(f) ole (bands - banderole), small
(g) on (illon) (chat - chaton), small

III. Adjective

Unlike English, the French adjective must agree with the substantive it modifies in gender and number.

A. Gender

1. Feminine adjectives are formed from the masculine forms in the following manners.

(a) Masculine adjectives ending in e remain unchanged.
    pauvre - pauvre

(b) Add e to masculine form.
    petit - petite

(c) Masculine adjectives ending in er become ère.
    fier - fière

(d) Masculine adjectives ending in f become ve.
    actif - active

(e) Masculine adjectives ending in el, eil, et, en, on, double final consonant and add e. 40
    cruel - cruelle

(f) Masculine adjective ending in e becomes che.
    blanc - blanche

40 Exceptions: Complet - complète; concret - concrete; discret - discrete; inquiet - inquiète; replet - replète; secret - secrète.
III. Adjective (cont.)

(g) Masculine adjectives ending in a
heureux - heureuse
(h) Masculine adjectives ending in gu
change to guê
aigu - aigüe
(i) Masculine adjectives derived from
Latin ending in eur add mute e.
meilleur - meilleure
(j) Masculine adjectives formed from
present participles and ending in
eur become euse.
causeur - causeuse
(k) Masculine adjectives ending in teur
become trice
créateur - créatrice

2. Some masculine adjectives have two forms
in singular (beau - bel; vieux - viel;
fou - fol; mou - mol; nouveau - nouvel). These forms are used as follows: The
second form (form ending in a consonant)
is used before substantives beginning with
a vowel or a mute h. In other cases the
first form is used.

B. Number

1. The same rules governing the plural of
nouns apply to the formation of the plural
of adjectives.

2. Invariable adjectives
(a) Demi - When precede noun.
(b) Nu - When precedes article.
(c) Feu - when precedes article.
(d) Clair - When compounded with
(e) Fonce - Adjectives of color.
(f) Adjective used as noun.

3. Compound adjectives
(a) Both parts take plural form unless
first part is used adverbially, when
it is invariable and second part re-
ceives ending.

41 Exceptions: Doux - douce, faux - fausse.
III. Adjective (cont.)

C. Case
1. There is no inflection for case in French.

D. Demonstrative adjectives.42
1. Ce – this, that.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>ce (cet)43</td>
<td>ces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>cette</td>
<td>ces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Particles used with demonstrative adjective:

ci – here       ce-ci – this
là – there      ce-là – that

Particles are invariable and must be used with ce forms:
cette plume-là
cette plume-ci

E. Possessive adjectives.44

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>mon</td>
<td>mes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td>tes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>ton</td>
<td>sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>ses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>son</td>
<td>nos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>notre</td>
<td>nos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>votre</td>
<td>vos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>leur</td>
<td>leurs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F. Indefinite adjectives

42 Demonstrative adjectives must be repeated before each noun and must agree in number and gender with each noun. One cannot say, as in English, these boys and girls, but, ces garçons et ces filles.

43 Cet form used before word beginning with a vowel or mute h.

44 Possessive adjectives must agree in number and gender with the thing possessed. They agree only in person with the possessor (This is unlike English but like Spanish and German). They must be repeated before each noun they modify. Son crayon may mean his or her pencil; for clarity, de lui or d'elle may be substituted. The rule as to agreement gives way for euphony and one uses masculine form before noun beginning vowel regardless of gender agreement (son amie).
III. Adjective (cont.)

1. Aucun - any, no.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>aucun</td>
<td>aucuns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>aucune</td>
<td>aucunes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Autre - other (invariable for gender).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>autre</td>
<td>autres</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Certain - certain, sure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>certain</td>
<td>certains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>certaine</td>
<td>certaines</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Chaque - each, every - invariable.

5. Maint - many a

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>maint</td>
<td>maints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>mainte</td>
<td>maintes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Même - same, self (invariable for gender).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>même</td>
<td>mêmes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Nul - no.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>nul</td>
<td>nuls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>nulle</td>
<td>nulles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Tel - such.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>tel</td>
<td>tels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>telle</td>
<td>telles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Tout - all, every.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>tout</td>
<td>tous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>toute</td>
<td>toutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

45 Aucun, meaning no, requires ne before verb.

46 Requires ne before verb.

47 If used with article, article precedes (unlike English, where article follows).

48 Tout may also be used as an adverb modifying a participle or adjective, in which case is invariable.
III. Adjective (cont.)


11. Quelque - a few, some (invariable in gender).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>quel</td>
<td>quelques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>quelque</td>
<td>quelques</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12. Quelconque - whatever (invariable for gender).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>quelconque</td>
<td>quelconques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>quelque</td>
<td>quelque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13. Un - a, one (no plural)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>un</td>
<td>un</td>
<td>une</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. Divers - several (always plural)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>divers</td>
<td>diverses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

G. Interrogative adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>quel</td>
<td>quelles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>quelle</td>
<td>quelles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H. Degrees

1. Comparative, is formed in three ways.

   (a) Use of aussi before adjective and que after it. Translates English, as.

   Il est aussi grand que Jean.

   49 Quelque before a numeral has adverbal force and is equivalent to English about. Before an adverb or adjective, it is equivalent to English however, no matter how.

   50 May also have exclamatory force - Quel jour! - What a day! (Notice French omits article).

   51 There is no comparative or superlative degree in French or Spanish, i.e., where the adjective or adverb receives some change in form. Que in all cases translates English than, except before a number, when que is replaced by de - Il a plus de livres.

   52 After a negative aussi becomes si - Il n'est pas si grand que Jean.
III. Adjective (cont.)

(b) Use of plus before the adjective and que after it. Translates English, more...than.
Il est plus grand que Jean.
(c) Use of moins before the adjective and que after it. Translates English, less...than.
Il est moins grand que Jean.

2. Superlative.53
(a) Formed by placing the definite article before the comparative form.
   intéressant - plus intéressant
   - le plus intéressant

3. Irregular comparisons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bon</td>
<td>meilleur</td>
<td>le meilleur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mauvais</td>
<td>moins mauvais</td>
<td>le plus mauvais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petit</td>
<td>moins petit</td>
<td>le plus petit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Substitutes for.56
(a) Use of superlative modifying words, such as très, bien, extrêmement, etc.
   Il est très aimable.

I. Numerals

1. Cardinals - invariable except for un - une, and quatre-vingt, which has a plural form, quatre vingts, and cent, which has a plural, cents.

2. Ordinals - are inflected and agree as any adjective.

53 English in after a superlative is translated in French by de. (Il est l'homme le plus riche de la ville.) The definite article may be replaced by a possessive adjective.

54 Pire, le pire are stronger forms than plus mauvais, le plus mauvais.

55 Moindre, le moindre means less important, least important; plus petit and le plus petit to size (comparable to Spanish).

56 As in other languages.
III. Adjective (cont.)

J. Formation of adjective.
1. Use of preposition and noun.
   de bois - wooden
2. Use of nouns as adjectives
   (a) Apposition.
      les philosophes poètes - poet philosophers
   (b) To denote color.
      les robes roses - red dresses
   (c) Adverbs as adjectives, bien and mal
      il est bien - good looking
      il n'est pas mal - not bad looking.

IV. Adverb

A. Degrees
1. Comparative - 5 ways of forming.
   (a) Use of aussi - as
      justement - aussi justement
   (b) Use of plus - more
      justement - plus justement
   (c) Use of moins - less
      justement - moins justement
2. Superlative.
   (a) Formed by use of definite article
      le plus justement
3. Irregular comparisons.
   Positive       Comparative        Superlative
      bien          mieux            le mieux
      mal           (plus mal)      (le plus mal
      (pis          (le pis
      beaucoup      plus            le plus
      peu           moins           le moins

4. Substitutes for
   (a) Use of superlative modifiers.
      tres, extrêmement, etc.

57 Usually such adjectives are invariable.
58 Invariable.
59 As with adjectives, English than is que in French.
IV. Adverb (cont.)

B. Formation of adverbs — from adjectives

1. Add suffix *ment* to stem of feminine singular of adjective.
   - *pure* — *purement*

2. If masculine singular of adjective ends in a vowel other than *e*, adverb is formed by adding *ment* to this form.
   - *absolu* — *absolument*

3. Masculine singular adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent*, drop the *nt* and double *m* of *ment* ending.
   - *constant* — *constamment*
   - *prudent* — *prudemment*

4. Some adjectives ending in *e* add acute accent before adding *ment*.
   - *énorme* — *énormément*

5. Some adjectives may be used as adverbs with no change.
   - *bas, haut, clair, cher*

V. Verb

The verb agrees with its subject in person and number. As in other languages, no distinction is made for sex. In spoken French, it is often difficult to distinguish the agreement for person, but in written French the agreement and distinctions made for person are easily discernible.

A. Principal parts

1. Infinitive (parler)
2. Present participle (parlant)
3. Past participle (parlé)
4. Present indicative (parle)
5. Past absolute (parla)

---

60 Both French and Spanish form adverbs from the feminine adjectival form.

61 A circumflex is often added to final vowel — continu — *continûment*.

62 There are three exceptions: Lent — *lentement*, présent — *présentement*, and véhément — *véhémentement*.

63 This is due to the French method of pronunciation which, as a rule, fails to make the last syllable and, especially, the last consonants audible.
V. Verb (cont.)

B. Formation of the tenses
1. From infinitive
   a. Future tense
   b. Conditional tense
2. From present participle stem
   a. Present indicative plural
   b. Imperfect indicative
   c. Present subjunctive
3. From past participle
   a. All compound tenses
   b. Present perfect tense, indicative and subjunctive
   c. Pluperfect tenses, indicative and subjunctive
4. From present indicative
   a. Present tense indicative
   b. Imperative
5. From past absolute
   a. Imperfect subjunctive

C. Number of conjugations (three)
   1. First conjugation - er verbs
   2. Second conjugation - ir verbs
   3. Third conjugation - re verbs

D. First conjugation (er verbs)
   1. Formation of principal parts
      a. Present participle formed by adding -ant to stem of infinitive.
      b. Past participle formed by adding -é to infinitive stem.
   2. Indicative tenses
      a. Present tense
         (1) Formed by adding the following endings to stem of infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

64 In French and Spanish it is easy to determine to which conjugation a verb belongs, since it is shown by the infinitive ending. In English and German, the principal parts must be learned, since the infinitive endings do not show this.

65 Some grammarians claim there are four conjugations in French, thus treating oir verbs as being of a separate conjugation. However, for the most part, oir verbs are generally included with re verbs. This is the way they are treated here.
V. Verbs (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>ez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Imperfect tense

(1) Formed by adding the following endings to the stem of present participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ais</td>
<td>ions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ais</td>
<td>iez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>ait</td>
<td>aient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Past absolute

(1) To stem of infinitive add following endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ai</td>
<td>ames</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>atea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>erent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Future

(1) Add following endings to complete infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ai</td>
<td>ons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>ez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ont</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. Conditional

(1) Add following endings to complete infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ais</td>
<td>ions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ais</td>
<td>iez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>ait</td>
<td>aient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

66 The imperfect tense endings are the same for all conjugations.

67 The future tense endings are the same for all conjugations except that 3rd conjugation verbs drop the final e of the infinitive.

68 The conditional tense endings are the same for all conjugations except that 3rd conjugation verbs drop final e of infinitive. It will be noted that the conditional tense endings are the same as the imperfect endings, but the complete verb forms are different, due to the fact that each tense uses different stem of the verb.
V. Verbs (cont.)

f. Perfect tenses.

(1) All perfect tenses in French are formed by the use of the conjugated form of one of the auxiliary verbs (avoir or être) in the desired tense (present for present perfect, imperfect for pluperfect, etc.) plus the past participle of the verb in question.

(a) Present perfect - auxiliary conjugated in present tense plus past participle of verb.

(b) Pluperfect - auxiliary conjugated in imperfect tense plus past participle of the verb.

(c) Past anterior - auxiliary conjugated in past absolute tense plus past participle of the verb.

(d) Future perfect - auxiliary conjugated in future tense plus past participle of the verb.

(e) Conditional perfect - auxiliary conjugated in conditional tense plus past participle of the verb.

E. Second conjugation (ir verbs)

1. Formation of principal parts
   a. Present participle formed by adding -issant to the stem of the infinitive.
   b. Past participle formed by adding -i to stem of infinitive.

2. Indicative tenses
   a. Present tense
      (1) Add following endings to stem of verb.

69 Compound tenses of all three conjugations are formed in the same manner.
V. Verbs (cont.)

b. Imperfect tense

(1) Add following endings to present participle stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>issons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>isses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>issent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Past absolute tense

(1) Add following endings to stem of verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>ient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Future tense

(1) Add following endings to complete infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>aons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ont</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. Conditional tense

(1) Add following endings to complete infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>iez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>aient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f. Compound tenses

(1) Are formed in same way as for first conjugation. The conjugated form of the auxiliary plus past participle of verb in question. See page 90.

70 Same as imperfect of first and second conjugation.

71 Same as past absolute of third conjugation.

72 Same as future of first and third conjugations.

73 Same as conditional of first and third conjugations.
V. Verbs (cont.)

F. Third conjugation (re verbs)

1. Formation of principal parts
   a. Present participle is formed by adding ant to stem of infinitive.
   b. Past participle is formed by adding u to stem of infinitive.

2. Indicative tenses
   a. Present tense
      (1) Add following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>ons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>ez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Imperfect tense74
(1) Add following endings to present participle stem

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ais</td>
<td>ions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ais</td>
<td>ies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>ait</td>
<td>aient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Past absolute75
(1) Add following endings to stem of verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>imes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>irent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Future tense76
(1) Add following endings to complete infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ai</td>
<td>ons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>ez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ont</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. Conditional tense77

74 Same as imperfect tense of first and second conjugations.
75 Same as past absolute of second conjugation.
76 Same as first and second conjugation.
77 Same as first and second conjugations.
V. Verbs (cont.)

(1) Add following endings to complete infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ais</td>
<td>ions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ais</td>
<td>iez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>ait</td>
<td>aient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f. Compound tenses

(1) Are formed as those verbs of first and second conjugations form compound tenses. See page 90.

G. Subjunctive mood.

1. Present tense

a. Add following endings to stem of present participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>iez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Imperfect tense

a. Add the following endings to the second person singular of the past absolute indicative tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>sions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ses</td>
<td>siez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>st</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Present perfect

a. Formed by conjugating the auxiliary (avoir or être) in the present subjunctive tense plus the past participle of the verb in question.

4. Pluperfect subjunctive

a. Formed by conjugating the auxiliary (avoir or être) in the imperfect subjunctive tense plus the past participle of the verb in question.

78 The subjunctive mood is the same for all three conjugations.

79 In the third person singular of the imperfect subjunctive, the final s of the past absolute ending is dropped and a circumflex placed over the final vowel.
V. Verbs (cont.)

H. Imperative

1. Formation

a. The second person singular of the imperative is taken from the second person singular of the present indicative tense.

b. The first and second persons plural of the imperative are formed from the same persons plural of the present indicative, keeping the same endings and forms.

c. The third persons singular and plural of the imperative are taken from the third persons singular and plural of the present indicative.

I. Passive voice

1. Formation

a. In French the passive voice is formed by the conjugated form of être in the desired tense plus the past participle of the verb in question (which agrees in number and gender with the subject).

2. Agent expressed

a. The English by is translated in French by par if the verb indicates a physical action. If the verb denotes a mental action by is translated by de. Par expresses a definite relation, de a vague relation or a habitual action.

---

80 The first person plural form is the same as the first person plural of present indicative (Let us go - allons). The third person singular and plural of the imperative are same as same persons singular and plural of the present subjunctive (qu'il aille, etc.) These forms are not true imperatives.

81 Exception: Verbs of the first conjugation drop the final s of the present indicative ending in the imperative except when immediately followed by y or en (donne - give; donnes - en).

82 For substitutes for the passive voice, see page 195.
V. Verbs (cont.)

J. Reflexive verbs
   1. Formation
      a. Reflexive verbs are formed and conjugated as any other verb except that in the perfect tenses (always conjugated with être), the past participle must agree with the subject in person and number. In all forms the reflexive pronoun corresponding to the subject must be included.

K. Reciprocal verbs
   1. Formation
      a. Reciprocal verbs are formed as any verb except that pronoun objects are included with the verb. These pronouns may be any of the plural reflexive pronouns or l'un, l'autre (l'une, l'autre). The past participle agrees as it does for reflexive verbs.

L. Irregular verbs
   1. Orthographical changing verbs
      a. Verbs ending in cer require a cedilla with the c before a strong vowel (a or o) in order to preserve the soft sound of the c as it was in the infinitive.
         placer - plaçons
      b. Verbs ending in ger take a mute e before a or o to preserve the soft sound of the g as it was in the infinitive.
         manger - mangeons
      c. Verbs ending in eler or eter double the l or t before a mute e.
         appeler - appelle

83 Mercier, College French, has an excellent table on this subject, page 348, paragraph 221.
84 If the reflexive verb also has a direct object preceding, the past participle will agree with this object; otherwise it agrees with the subject or reflexive pronoun (which are of same gender and number).
85 Composed of first conjugation verbs which undergo changes in spelling.
V. Verbs (cont.)

d. Verbs having a mute e in the next to the last syllable, change the mute e to an e with a grave accent, è, when followed by a mute e.
   mener - même

e. Verbs ending in oyer, uyer, change y to ı before a mute e.
   nettoyer - nettoie

f. Verbs ending in ayer may change y to ı before mute e, but this is optional.
   payer - paie or paye

g. Verbs having e with acute accent (è) in the next to the last syllable change to grave accent (è) before a mute e except in future and conditional tenses.
   répéter - répète

2. Other irregular verbs

   a. For these verbs no really helpful rules can be set down as to the changes which occur. It is necessary to learn each verb separately, mastering the changes which occur within each verb. Good lists of these verbs can be found in any good French grammar.

M. Impersonal verbs

1. Impersonal verbs are conjugated in the third person singular only but may be conjugated in any tense. The indefinite il is the subject of all impersonal verbs in French.

   a: Verbs denoting natural phenomena are always impersonal.
   il pleut

86 Five verbs require a grave accent (\( \grave{e} \)) on the e before ı or t when followed by mute e and these verbs do not double the consonant. These verbs are: Acheter, celer, épousseter, geler and peler (acheter - achète).

87 Except envoyer whose future is irregular - enverrai, and conditional - enverrais.
V. Verbs (cont.)

b. *Falloir* is always impersonal.
   il faut

c. Verbs denoting time are impersonal.
   il est tard

d. *Avoir* may be used impersonally when
   used with *il* as subject and used with
   y
   *il y a* - there is, there are.

e. *Être* may be used impersonally when
   used with *il*.
   As in time - *il est tard*

f. *Voici - voilà* - translate English
   here is, here are, there is, there
   are. These forms are invariable.

g. *Faire* may be used impersonally with
   *il* as subject.
   *Il fait beau temps*

h. Many other verbs may be used im­
   personally (venir, agir, arriver, valoir,
   pouvoir).
   Il viendra un meilleur temps

N. Past participle

1. If verbs conjugate with *être*, the past
   participle must agree, as any adjective,
   in gender and number with the subject.

2. Verbs conjugated with *avoir*, which have a
   preceding direct object, must have the
   adjectival agreement of the past partici­
   ple.

3. The past participle in the passive voice
   must agree in number and gender with the
   subject.

4. Any participle used as an adjective has
   full inflection.

5. Reflexive verbs require that the past
   participle have full adjectival inflection
   in order to agree in number and gender
   with the subject (or object if object pre­
   cedes).

---

88 *il y a*, the singular translates English there are.
(Spanish is same as French).
V. Verbs (cont.)

O. Present participle
1. When used adjectivally must have full inflection to agree in number and gender with the word or words they modify.

P. Formation of compound verbs
1. Many compound verbs are formed by use of prefixes with other verbs. Such verbs are
   - venir - revenir, etc.
   - prendre - apprendre - comprendre

German

I. Article

A. Definite

1. Declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>All genders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>des</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>der</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>den</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>den</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Contractions with prepositions
   a. The definite article in the dative and accusative cases is often contracted with prepositions. Most prepositions may be contracted. A brief list follows.
      - am (andem)
      - auf das (auf das)
      - aus (au das)
      - beim (bei dem)
      - durch das (durch das)
      - fürs (für das)
      - im (in dem)
      - ins (in das)
      - vom (vor dem)
      - vors (vor das)
      - zum (zu dem)
      - zur (zu der)

B. Indefinite

89 Like der, other words are de ser, jener, jeder, welcher, solcher, mancher.

90 Like ein, are declined, mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, Ihr, kein.
I. Article (cont.)

1. Declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ein</td>
<td>eine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eines</td>
<td>einer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>einem</td>
<td>einer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>einen</td>
<td>eine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Contraction

a. The indefinite article does not contract with prepositions.

C. Uninflected article

1. In a few expressions such as *ein paar*, *ein wenig*, *ein solch*, the *ein* is not inflected.

II. Substantives

A. Pronouns

1. Personal pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st p.</th>
<th>2 fam.</th>
<th>2 form</th>
<th>3 masc</th>
<th>3 fem</th>
<th>3 neut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ich</td>
<td>du</td>
<td>Sie</td>
<td>er</td>
<td>sie</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>deine</td>
<td>Ihrer</td>
<td>seiner</td>
<td>ihrer</td>
<td>seiner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mir</td>
<td>dir</td>
<td>Ihnen</td>
<td>ihm</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mich</td>
<td>dich</td>
<td>Sie</td>
<td>ihn</td>
<td>sie</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

91 There is no true plural for *ein*. Here *kein* (no) is used as example.

92 The *ein* of *ein solch* if follows *solch* (*solch ein*) is inflected.

93 Personal pronouns must agree with the noun for which it stands in gender and number. Its case depends upon its own function in the sentence.

94 Notice that German has three forms for the English *you*, *du*, *ihr*, *Sie"
II. Substantives (cont.)

a. Compounds of personal pronouns.
Personal pronouns when referring to inanimate objects or ideas and used in dative and accusative cases may be contracted with most prepositions; da replaces the pronominal form and is attached to the preposition, as follows:

- daran - at it
- darauf - upon it
- daraus - out of it
- dabei - thereby
- dadurch - through it
- dafür - for it
- dagegen - against it
- damit - with it
- danach - after it
- davon - of it

2. Demonstrative pronouns
a. Der - die - das

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>All genders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>der</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dessen</td>
<td>deren</td>
<td>dessen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>den</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>den</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>das</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Dieser - diese - dieses (this one)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dieser</td>
<td>dieser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dieses</td>
<td>dieses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diesem</td>
<td>diesen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diesen</td>
<td>diesen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

95 Such contractions are called "da" words.

96 Daran, etc., also may stand for at them. There is no inflection for number of the "da" words, the same form stands for singular or plural. Da before a preposition beginning in a vowel becomes dar (daran).

97 It will be noticed that the demonstrative pronouns (der, die, das) are declined like the definite article except for the genitive forms and the dative plural.

98 Derer is used if a relative clause follows; in other cases deren is used.

99 Dieser and jener are used to translate the English the latter, the former (respectively).
II. Substantives (cont.)

c. Jener - jene - jenes (that one)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Jener</td>
<td>jene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>jene</td>
<td>jen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>jenes</td>
<td>jene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All genders</td>
<td>jene</td>
<td>jenes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Solcher - solche - solches (such a one)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>solcher</td>
<td>solche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>solche</td>
<td>solchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>solches</td>
<td>solchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All genders</td>
<td>solcher</td>
<td>solchen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. Derselbe - dieselbe - dasselbe (the same)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>derselbe</td>
<td>dieselbe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>dieselbe</td>
<td>dasselbe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>dasselbe</td>
<td>dasselbe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All genders</td>
<td>dasselbe</td>
<td>dasselbe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Interrogative pronouns

a. Wer - who (all genders and singular and plural alike).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular and plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>wer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>wessen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>wom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>wen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Was - what (used only in nominative and accusative).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular and plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

100 It will be notices the der part of the word is declined regularly as an article and the selber part as an adjective following a "der" word.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(1) Was, when governed by a preposition and referring to inanimate objects may be replaced by a "wo" word, "wo" taking the place of was and being attached to the preposition, as follows:

- worauf - on what?
- worin - in what?
- wovon - of what?
- wozu - to what?
- womit - with what?
- woraus - out of what?
- wofür - for what?

c. Was für ein - invariable except for the ein part, which has full inflection.

4. Indefinite pronouns

a. Jemand (someone) is invariable except for genitive which is jemands.
b. Man - indeclinable unless ein is substituted, thus:
   - Nom. man
   - Gen. eines
   - Dat. einem
   - Acc. einen
c. Kein (no one), inflected like ein.
d. Jed (each), regular adjective declension.
e. Jeglich (each), regular adjective declension.
f. Manch (many), regular adjective declension.
g. Wenig (few), invariable except after limiting word.
h. viel (many), invariable except after limiting word.

101 As in da words, wo becomes wor before a preposition beginning in a vowel (worin).
102 Für in this expression does not have prepositional force, hence it does not govern the accusative case.
103 Jed and jeglich may be preceded by ein.
104 Manch followed by an adjective is uninflected.
II. Substantives (cont.)

i. Einige (several - more than two but less than five), has regular plural inflection.\(^{105}\)
j. Mehrere (several - more than five), has regular plural inflection.\(^{105}\)
k. Nichts (nothing), invariable.
l. Alles (everything), invariable.
m. Etwas (something), invariable.
n. Beide (both), regular adjective inflection.
o. Ander (other), regular adjective inflection.
p. All (all), regular adjective inflection.\(^{106}\)

q. Ein (one), no plural.\(^{107}\)

\[\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{Masculine} & \text{Feminine} & \text{Neuter} \\
\text{Nom.} & \text{einer} & \text{eine} & \text{eines} \\
\text{Gen.} & \text{eines} & \text{einer} & \text{eines} \\
\text{Dat.} & \text{einem} & \text{einer} & \text{einem} \\
\text{Acc.} & \text{einen} & \text{eine} & \text{eines} \\
\end{array}\]

r. Etlich (some), regular adjective inflection.\(^{108}\)

s. Was (something), invariable.
t. Niemand (no one), invariable.
u. Jedermann (everyone), invariable except for genitive - jedermanns.

5. Relative pronouns

a. Der - who, which, that.

\[\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{Singular} & \text{Plural} \\
\text{Masculine} & \text{Feminine} & \text{Neuter} & \text{All genders} \\
\text{Nom.} & \text{der} & \text{die} & \text{das} & \text{die} \\
\text{Gen.} & \text{dessen} & \text{deren} & \text{dessen} & \text{deren} \\
\text{Dat.} & \text{dem} & \text{der} & \text{dem} & \text{denen} \\
\text{Acc.} & \text{den} & \text{das} & \text{die} & \text{die} \\
\end{array}\]

\(^{105}\) Einige and mehrere are always plural, hence have no singular inflection. Einige is not necessarily limited to a number less than five, but it is used to signify a smaller number than mehrere.

\(^{106}\) Before der or a possessive may be uninflected.

\(^{107}\) Is declined like indefinite article except in masculine nominative and neuter nominative and accusative.

\(^{108}\) Seldom used.
II. **Substantives (cont).**

b. *Welch - who, which, that.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. welcher</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. welcher</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welcher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. welchem</td>
<td>welcher</td>
<td>welchem, welchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. welchen</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. welche</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. welche</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welcher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. welchen</td>
<td>welchen</td>
<td>welchen, welchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. welche</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuter</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. welches</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. welches</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welcher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. welchen</td>
<td>welchen</td>
<td>welchen, welchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. welchen</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>All genders</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. welcher</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. welcher</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welcher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. welchen</td>
<td>welchen</td>
<td>welchen, welchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. welchen</td>
<td>welche</td>
<td>welches, welche</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. *Wer - who, he who, whoever (does not vary for gender or number).*

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. wer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. wessen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. vem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. wen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. *Was - what, whatever, that which (does not vary for gender or number).*

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. was</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. wessen, was</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>was</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. *"Wo" words.*

(1) Relative pronouns referring to inanimate things and in dative and accusative cases may be expressed by prefixing wo (wor before a vowel) to the preposition, such as worauf, worin, etc.

6. **Possessive pronouns.**

a. Tables of.

(1) *Meiner (nominative case).*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mine</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yours</td>
<td>deiner</td>
<td>deine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His, its</td>
<td>seiner</td>
<td>seine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuter</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her, its</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

109 Wer and was are indefinite relative pronouns which do not have definite antecedents as do der and welcher. 
Wer refers to persons; was refers to things or Ideas.

110 Wes is seldom used except in compounds such as weshalb.

111 All three forms, the possessive pronoun may be used interchangeably (meiner - der meine - der meinige).
II. Substantives (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Singular (cont.)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>Ihrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ours</td>
<td>unserer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>euerner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theirs</td>
<td>ihrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>Ihrer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**All genders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Plural</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mine</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>deine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His, its</td>
<td>seine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hers</td>
<td>ihre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>Ihre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ours</td>
<td>unsere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>euere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theirs</td>
<td>ihre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>Ihre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Der **meine (nominative)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Masculine</strong></th>
<th><strong>Feminine</strong></th>
<th><strong>Neuter</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mine</td>
<td>der meine</td>
<td>die meine</td>
<td>das meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>der deine</td>
<td>die deine</td>
<td>das deine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His, its</td>
<td>der seine</td>
<td>die seine</td>
<td>das seine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hers</td>
<td>der ihre</td>
<td>die ihre</td>
<td>das ihre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>der Ihre</td>
<td>die Ihre</td>
<td>das Ihre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ours</td>
<td>der unsere</td>
<td>die unsere</td>
<td>das unsere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>der euere</td>
<td>die euere</td>
<td>das euere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theirs</td>
<td>der ihre</td>
<td>die ihre</td>
<td>das ihre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>der Ihre</td>
<td>die Ihre</td>
<td>das Ihre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**All genders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Plural</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mine</td>
<td>die meinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>die deinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His, its</td>
<td>die seinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hers</td>
<td>die ihren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>die Ihren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ours</td>
<td>die unsern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>die eueren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theirs</td>
<td>die ihren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
<td>die Ihren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) Der **meinige (nominative)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Masculine</strong></th>
<th><strong>Feminine</strong></th>
<th><strong>Neuter</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>der meinige</td>
<td>die meinige</td>
<td>das meinige</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der deinige</td>
<td>die deinige</td>
<td>das deinige</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der seinige</td>
<td>die seinige</td>
<td>das seinige</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der ihrige</td>
<td>die ihrige</td>
<td>das ihrige</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. Substantives (cont.)

(3) Der meinige (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>der Ihrige</td>
<td>die Ihrige</td>
<td>das Ihrige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der unsrige</td>
<td>die unsrige</td>
<td>das unsrige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der eurige</td>
<td>die eurige</td>
<td>das eurige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der ihrige</td>
<td>die ihrige</td>
<td>das ihrige</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All genders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His, its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Declension of possessive pronouns

(1) Meiner and all pronouns listed under a.(1) above are declined as follows: 112

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. meiner</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>meines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. meines</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. meinem</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meinem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. meinen</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>meines</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>All genders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Der meine and all pronouns listed under a.(2) above are declined as follows: 113

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. der meine</td>
<td>die meine</td>
<td>das meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. des meinen</td>
<td>der meinen</td>
<td>des meinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. dem meinen</td>
<td>der meinen</td>
<td>dem meinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. den meinen</td>
<td>die meine</td>
<td>das meine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

112 Meiner is declined like dieser or any der word.

113 Der meine and der meinige are declined as any der word and an adjective.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(2) Der meine (cont.)

Plural

All genders
Nom. die meinen
Gen. der meinen
Dat. den meinen
Acc. die meinen

(3) Der meinige and all pronouns listed under a.(3) above are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>der meinige</td>
<td>die meinige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>des meinigen</td>
<td>der meinigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dem meinigen</td>
<td>der meinigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>den meinigen</td>
<td>die meinige</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Any possessive pronoun may be used in conjunction with any one of three prepositions (halb, 114 wegen, um. . willen) to form a compound possessive. These compounds are formed by suffixing et to the stem of the possessive pronoun and immediately adding the preposition, thus forming one compound word (meinethalb, seinetwegen, um deinetwillen, etc.). These forms translate the English on account of, for the sake of, etc.

(2) Genitive with gleichen.115

(a) A compound word may be formed with gleichen and the genitive case of any

114 Halb also has two other forms - halber and halben. These three forms are interchangeable and are always the latter part of a compound.

115 Once formed these forms are invariable.
II. Substantives (cont.)

7. Reflexive pronouns - invariable.
   Singular                     Plural
   mich (myself)               uns (ourselves)
   dich (yourself)             euch (yourselves)
   sich (himself, her-, self, itself) sich (yourselves)
   sich (yourself, formal) 116

8. Reciprocal pronouns
   a. Any of the plural reflexive pronouns.
   b. Einander (one another), invariable.

B. Noun

1. Inflection as to gender (see gender of German nouns).
   a. The article is the main designator of the gender of nouns.
   b. Masculine nouns denoting profession, etc., may add in to form the feminine equivalent.
      der Lehrer - die Lehrerin

2. Inflection as to number.
   a. In German there are four ways in which the plural number of nouns may be formed, thus creating four declensions for nouns. Examples of each will be given under 1, 5, 6, 7, page 109.
   b. All nouns add n or en in the dative plural unless they already end in n.
      den Vatern

3. Inflection as to case.
   a. Masculine and neuter nouns.
      (1) Usually add a or es in the genitive singular. 117
         des Vaters

---

116 *sich is the only case where a pronoun referring to Sie (you, formal) is not written with a capital letter.
117 *Polysyllabic nouns add a. Monosyllabic nouns may add a or es unless they end in sibilants (s, ss, sch, z), in which case they add es.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(2) May add _e_ in the dative singular.

b. Feminine nouns.

(1) Remain unchanged throughout declension with regard to case.

c. Weak nouns.

(1) A few masculine nouns belonging to the fourth declension (nouns adding _n_ or _en_ to form the plural), add _en_ in all cases of the singular except the nominative.

    der Knabe - des Knaben -
    dem Knaben - den Knaben

4. First declension (no change in plural except possibly an umlaut).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>der Vater</td>
<td>die Mutter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>des Vaters</td>
<td>der Mütter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dem Vater</td>
<td>der Mütter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>den Vater</td>
<td>die Mütter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

| Nom. | die Väter | die Mütter | die Gebirge |
| Gen. | der Väter | der Mütter | der Gebirge |
| Dat. | den Vätern | den Müttern | den Gebirgen |
| Acc. | die Väter | die Mütter | die Gebirge |

a. To this declension belong the following nouns.

(1) All masculine and neuter nouns ending in _el, en, er_.

    der Onkel, etc.

(2) All neuter nouns with the diminutive _chen_ or _lein_.

    das Mädchen

(3) All neuters with the prefix _Ge_ and the suffix _e_.

    das Gebirge

(4) Only two feminines

    die Mutter and die Tochter

---

118 The addition of _e_ to masculine and neuter nouns in the dative singular is slowly becoming obsolete.

119 Herr forms its genitive, dative and accusative by adding _n_, not _en_.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(5) Infinitives used as nouns.
    - das Leben

(6) Umlaut is used with the two feminines, often with the masculine nouns, but never with the neuter nouns.

5. Second declension (add e in plural; may also add umlaut).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. der Baum</td>
<td>die Hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. des Baums</td>
<td>der Hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. dem Baum</td>
<td>der Hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. den Baum</td>
<td>die Hand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. die Bäume</td>
<td>die Hände</td>
<td>die Werke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. der Bäume</td>
<td>der Hände</td>
<td>der Werke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. den Bäumen</td>
<td>den Händen</td>
<td>den Werken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. die Bäume</td>
<td>die Hände</td>
<td>die Werke</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- To this declension belong the following nouns:
  1. Most monosyllabic and polysyllabic masculines.
     - der Fluss
  2. Some monosyllabic feminines.
     - die Nacht
  3. Many monosyllabic neuters.
     - das Eroth
  4. A few polysyllabic neuters.
     - das Gedicht
  5. All masculines ending in ig, ing, ling.
     - der Frühling
  6. Neuter nouns ending in nis and sal.
     - das Erlebnis
  7. Umlaut is used with feminine always, often with masculine, but never with neuters.

\textsuperscript{120} Nouns already having an umlaut in the singular (das Mädöchen) retain the umlaut in the plural.

\textsuperscript{121} Such nouns add an e before the ending.
II. Substantives (cont.)

6. Third declension (add er and umlaut in plural).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>der Mann</td>
<td>das Buch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>des Mannes</td>
<td>des Buchs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dem Mann</td>
<td>dem Buch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>den Mann</td>
<td>das Buch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. To this declension belong the following nouns.

1. A few monosyllabic masculines.
   der Mann

2. Most monosyllabic neuters.
   das Bild

3. No feminines.

4. A few foreign neuters which accent the last syllable.
   das Eigentum

5. Nouns ending in -um.

6. Umlaut is used always.

7. Fourth Declension (add n or en).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

122 i.e. Where umlaut can be used - on strong vowels
- a, o, u

123 Nouns of this declension do not add n in the dative plural since the nouns already end in n.
II. Substantives (cont.).

a. To this declension belong the following nouns:
   (1) All polysyllabic feminines.\(^{124}\)
   - die Antwort
   (2) Most monosyllabic feminines.\(^{125}\)
   - die Tür
   (3) A few monosyllabic masculines.
   - der Herr
   (4) A few masculines ending in `.
   - der Knabe
   (5) Foreign masculine nouns which accent the last syllable.
   - der Student
   (6) No neuters.
   (7) Umlaut is never used.\(^{126}\)

8. Irregularities in noun declension
   a. Several masculine and neuter nouns take the singular endings of a first declension noun and the plural endings of a fourth declension noun.
   - der Bauer - das Ohr
   b. A few masculine nouns ending in ` add ` in the genitive singular and ` in all the other cases of the singular except the nominative.
   - der Gedanke
   c. Das Herz - adds ` in the genitive singular and ` in the dative singular and ` in the plural
   - das Herz, des Herzens, dem Herzen, das Herz; die Herzen, etc.

   a. Remain invariable if preceded by der.\(^{127}\)
   b. Add genitive ` (es) in singular.\(^{128}\)

---

\(^{124}\) Except Mutter and Tochter which are first declension nouns.
\(^{125}\) Except a few which belong to the second declension (die Augst, die Hand, etc.)
\(^{126}\) Unless word already has umlaut in singular (die Tür - die Türen).
\(^{127}\) May take genitive ` after der.
\(^{128}\) If proper name ends in sibilant (` s, ss, sch, z), add ` instead of ` in genitive singular. Such nouns may also just add apostrophe and no ending (Hansens Buch or Hans' Buch).
II. Substantives (cont.)

10. Declension of nouns derived from adjective.
   a. The adjective is inflected as any adjective, agreeing with a noun understood. The only change in form from regular adjectives is use of capital letter.
      gut - das Gute

11. Compound nouns.
   a. Gender of
      (1) The last part of the word determines the gender.
   b. Number of
      (1) The last part of the word determines the declension to which it belongs.
   c. Case of
      (1) Determined by use in sentence and inflected according to last part of the word.

   a. From adjectives with no change in form except for capitalization of first letter.  
      gut - das Gute
   b. Add in to masculine nouns denoting profession to form the feminine equivalent.
      der Lehrer - die Lehrerin
   c. Add schaft and umlaut to nouns to form feminine abstract nouns.
      die Freund - die Freundschaft
   d. Add e and umlaut to adjectives to form feminine nouns of size.
      gross - die Grosse
   e. Add heit to adjectives.
      schön - die Schönheit
   f. Add keit to adjectives ending in lich.
      herrlich - die Herrlichkeit

129 Such nouns must agree, as any adjective, with a noun understood. Masculine and feminine forms, singular and plural, refer to persons. The neuter singular form refers to abstract qualities. Nouns derived from adjectives of nationality which denote language are inflected only when preceded by der.
II. Substantives (cont.)

g. From stem of infinitive.
   danken - der Dank

h. From complete infinitive.
   leben - das Leben

i. From participles (past and present)
   by capitalization of first letter
   and regular adjectival agreement with
   noun understood.
   der Reisende - die Geliebte

j. From infinitive stem plus er to denote
   agent.
   lehren - der Lehrer

k. Add ung to infinitive stem.
   erzählen - die Erzählung

l. Compound nouns.
   (1) Two nouns in apposition
       der Hausherr
   (2) Two nouns, first element of
       which is genitive case.
       der Geburtstag
   (3) Two nouns by addition of en to
       first element.
       das Ehrenwort
   (4) Adjective and noun with no in-
       flexion of adjective.
       die Jungfrau
   (5) Verb and noun.
       das Lesebuch
   (6) Particle and noun.
       das Jawort

   a. Are formed in German by adding chen
      or lein to the noun and adding an
      umlaut where possible.
      der Bruder - das Bruderlein

III. Adjective

A. Inflection as to gender, number and case.

130 Note that the addition of chen or lein changes
the original gender of the noun to neuter.

131 i.e., attributive adjectives. Adjectives not
used attributively are invariable in German. This is a pe-
culiarity of the German language since in all other langua-
ges that inflect the adjective, it is inflected whether used
attributively or predicatively.
### III. Adjective (cont.)

1. There are three adjectival declensions, the weak (preceded by der), the mixed (preceded by ein), and the strong (unmodified).
   a. The weak adjective declension (after any der word),¹³²

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter ¹³³</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Nomin.</td>
<td>der gute—</td>
<td>die gute—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Gen.</td>
<td>des guten—</td>
<td>der guten—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Dat.</td>
<td>den guten—</td>
<td>die guten—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Acc.</td>
<td>den guten—</td>
<td>die guten—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nomin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. The mixed adjective declension (after any ein word),¹³⁴

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter ¹³⁴</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Nomin.</td>
<td>ein guter—</td>
<td>eine gute—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Gen.</td>
<td>eines guten</td>
<td>einer guten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Dat.</td>
<td>einem guten</td>
<td>einer guten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Acc.</td>
<td>einen guten</td>
<td>eine gute—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nomin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. The strong declension (unmodified),¹³⁵

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter ¹³⁵</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Nomin.</td>
<td>guter—</td>
<td>gute—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Gen.</td>
<td>guten—</td>
<td>guten—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Dat.</td>
<td>gutem—</td>
<td>gutem—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg. Acc.</td>
<td>guten—</td>
<td>gute—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nomin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹³² der words - der, dieser, jener, jeder, welcher, mancher, solcher.

¹³³ The blanks stand for nouns.

¹³⁴ ein words - ein, kein, possessive adjectives.

¹³⁵ This declension of the adjective is used when no article precedes the adjective or when the adjective is modified by another uninflected adjective, such as a numeral, viel, wenig, etc. (zwei gute Männer).
III. Adjective (cont.)

B. Contractions of adjectives.
1. Adjectives ending in el, en, er, may drop the e before adding the inflectional endings.

C. Uninflected adjectives.
1. Unless preceded by der adjectives used as nouns to denote nationality and language are uninflected.
2. Adjectives not used attributively are invariable.
3. Viel is invariable in the singular.\(^{135}\)

D. Demonstrative adjectives.

dieser - this, these  
jeder - each, every  
jener - that, those

mancher - many a  
solcher - such  
welcher - which

E. Possessive adjectives

1. Table of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>All genders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your</td>
<td>dein</td>
<td>deine</td>
<td>dein</td>
<td>deine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(fam.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His,</td>
<td>sein</td>
<td>seine</td>
<td>sein</td>
<td>seine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>its</td>
<td>wissen</td>
<td>ihre</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(form.)</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our</td>
<td>unser</td>
<td>unsere</td>
<td>unser</td>
<td>unsere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your</td>
<td>euer</td>
<td>euere</td>
<td>euer</td>
<td>euere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Their</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
<td>ihr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Declension of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>All genders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>meines</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meines</td>
<td>meiner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>meinem</td>
<td>meiner</td>
<td>meinem</td>
<td>meinen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>meinen</td>
<td>meine</td>
<td>mein</td>
<td>meine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{135}\) When preceded by der or a possessive, viel is inflected even in the singular.
III. Adjective (cont.)

a. All the possessives listed in the above table are declined like mein above.

F. Indefinite adjectives.
   1. All (all) - has regular adjectival inflection.136
   2. Ander (other) - regular adjectival inflection.
   3. Beide (both) - regular adjectival inflection.
   4. Einig (some) - regular adjectival inflection.
   5. Etlich (some) - regular adjectival inflection.
   6. Etwas (somewhat) - invariable.
   7. Irgend (some, any) - invariable.
   8. Jeder (each, every) - regular adjectival inflection.
   9. Kein (no) - declined as ein.
  10. Manch (many) - regular adjectival inflection.137
  11. Mehr (more) - invariable.
  12. Mehrer (several) - regular adjectival inflection.
  13. Nichts (no) - invariable.
  14. Viel (many) - invariable in singular, regular plural adjectival inflection.138
  15. Wenig (little, few) - uninflected in singular, regular plural inflection.

G. Interrogative adjectives
   1. Welcher - welche - welches (which).
      a. Declined as any der word.
   2. Was für ein - what kind of?
      a. Ein takes regular declension of an ein word.139

H. Irregularities in adjective declension.
   1. Adjectives ending in en which are derived from the names of towns are invariable.

136 All before der may be uninflected.
137 If inflected if no adjective follows. Followed by an adjective is uninflected.
138 In singular, viel is inflected as any adjective if preceded by der.
139 The für in this expression does not have prepositional force, hence the case following it is not necessarily accusative.
III. Adjective (cont.)

der Kölner Dom.
2. Ganz and Halb when not preceded by an article are uninflexed before neuter names of places.
   ganz Deutschland
3. Compound adjectives formed from two adjectives and hyphenated inflect only the last part.
   der deutsch-französische Krieg
4. Adjectives ending in el, en, er, may drop this e before adding the inflectional endings.
5. Adjectives always used in predicate are invariable.
6. Hoch becomes hoh when inflected.

I. Degrees

1. Comparative
   a. Is formed by adding er to positive form of the adjective.
      reich - reicher

2. Superlative
   a. Is formed by suffixing st (est)\(^\text{141}\) to positive form of the adjective.
      reich - reichst
   b. May be formed by use of definite article and superlative form of adjective which has full adjectival inflection.
      der reichste
   c. Is formed by using am plus the superlative form with dative ending (am reichsten). This form is invariable\(^\text{142}\).

\(^{140}\) Most monosyllabic adjectives add an umlaut, if possible, in the comparative and superlative degrees. e of unaccented endings el, en, er is usually dropped in comparative, but in superlative degrees is kept. English than is translated by als. English as. . .as, is so. . .wie.

\(^{141}\) Est is used if positive form of adjective ends in d or t or in a sibilant. However, with participles ending in end the st form is used.

\(^{142}\) This form of the superlative is used when the adjective stands alone in the predicate and does not modify a noun attributively. Generally found after sein, taking the place of a predicate noun (Unter den drei Männern ist er am reichsten).
III. Adjective (cont.)

3. Irregular comparison:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gut</td>
<td>besser</td>
<td>der beste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gross</td>
<td>grösser</td>
<td>der grösste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoch</td>
<td>höher</td>
<td>der höchste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nah</td>
<td>näher</td>
<td>der nächste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viel</td>
<td>mehr</td>
<td>der meiste</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Substitutes for degrees.
   a. By use of superlative modifying words such as höchst, äusserst, etc., with the positive degree.

   Es ist höchst interessant.

J. Numerals

1. Cardinals, except for ein, remain uninflected whether used attributively or in the predicate.

2. Ordinals, agree as any adjective and have full adjectival inflection.

K. Formation of adjectives.

1. By means of suffixes, such as artig, bar, en, erlei, fach, ig, haft, lich, etc.

   gross - grossartig, etc.

2. By means of prefixes, such as erz, ge, un, ur.

   faul - erzfaul

3. From proper names by means of suffix er. These adjectives are invariable and are generally written with capital letters.

   der Kölner Dom

4. Other adjectives are formed from proper names by adding suffix Fach. These adjectives are uninflected and are written with capital letters.

5. By suffixing ig or lich to a noun and often adding umlaut.

   die Macht - mächtig

6. English "made of" is formed by adding en to noun.

   das Gold - golden.

---

143 The second superlative form of these adjectives is am besten, am grössten, am höchsten, am nächsten, am meisten.

144 Zwei and drei may be inflected if there is no other method of showing the case of the noun.
III. Adjective (cont.)

7. Compound adjectives
   a. Noun and adjective.
      herzenskran
   b. Adjective and adjective
      hellgrün

IV. Adverb.

A. Degrees.
   1. Comparative.
      a. Is formed by suffixing er to the positive form.
         schnell - schneller
   2. Superlative.
      a. Is formed by preposition am plus superlative degree in dative case.
         schnell - am schnellsten
      b. With preposition auf's plus superlative degree in accusative case.145
         aufs schnellste

3. Irregular comparisons
   Positive      Comparative    Superlative
   gern           lieber        am liebsten

4. Substitutes
   a. Use of superlative modifiers such as höchst, etc., used before the positive form of the adverb.

B. Formation of adverbs.
   1. Most adjectives may be used as adverbs with no change in form.
   2. The genitive case of certain nouns may be used adverbially.
      morgens

V. Verb.

The verb agrees with its subject in person and number. As in the other languages no distinction is made for sex.

---

145 This form is used when no comparison is implied. It merely denotes a high degree.
V. Verb (cont.)

A. Principal parts
1. Infinitive - spielen
2. Present tense - spielt
3. Past tense - spielte
4. Past participle - gespielt

D. Formation of the tenses.
1. From infinitive.
   a. Present participle (by adding d).
   b. Present tense (indicative and subjunctive),
   c. Imperative
   d. Future tense
   e. Conditional tense
2. From past tense.
   a. All forms of past tense
   b. Second form of present subjunctive
3. From past participle
   a. All perfect tenses.

C. Number of conjugations (two).
1. Weak conjugation
   a. Verbs adding endings in past tense.
2. Strong conjugation
   a. Verbs forming past tense by means of
      a vowel change.

D. Weak conjugation
1. Formation of principal parts.
   a. Infinitive - itself.
   b. Past tense - by adding to endings to
      infinitive stem.

---

146 The present tense is not included in the principal parts of all verbs, but only in those of strong conjugation where the vowel changes from the infinitive vowel in the present tense, second and third persons singular.

147 As in English, there is no method of determining to which conjugation a verb belongs, hence it is necessary to learn the principal parts of each verb as it is learned. (In French and Spanish the infinitive ending distinguishes a verb, but this is not true of English and German.)
V. Verb (cont.)

2. Formation of the indicative tenses.
   a. Present tense
      (1) Formed by adding the following endings to stem of infinitive.

      | Singular | Plural |
      |----------|-------|
      | 1st p.   | e     | en    |
      | 2nd p.   | st    | t     |
      | 3rd p.   | t     | en    |
      | 2nd form.| en    | en    |

   b. Past tense
      (1) Formed by adding the following endings to the stem of infinitive.

      | Singular | Plural |
      |----------|-------|
      | 1st p.   | te    | ten   |
      | 2nd p.   | test  | tet   |
      | 3rd p.   | te    | ten   |
      | 2nd form.| ten   | ten   |

   c. Future tense
      (1) Formed by conjugating werden in the present indicative tense, plus the infinitive of the verb in question.

   d. Conditional tense.
      (1) Formed by conjugating werden in the past indicative tense plus the infinitive of the verb in question.

   e. Perfect tenses.
      (1) All perfect tenses in German are formed by the conjugated form of the auxiliary (haben or sein) in the corresponding tense plus the past participle of the verb in question.

---

148 Weak verbs having an inseparable prefix merely add t to infinitive stem to form the past participle (versucht). Other verbs which do not add ge prefix in past participle are those verbs ending in ier or of foreign origin and accenting last syllable (studiert). The inseparable prefixes are be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, zer. Weak verbs having separable prefix insert ge between prefix and stem and add t (aufgehort).
V. Verb (cont.)

(a) Present perfect - auxiliary conjugated in present tense plus past participle of the verb.
(b) Pluperfect - auxiliary conjugated in past tense plus past participle of the verb.
(c) Future perfect - auxiliary werden conjugated in present tense plus perfect infinitive.149
(d) Conditional perfect - auxiliary werden conjugated in the past tense plus the perfect infinitive of the verb.

E. The strong conjugation.
1. Formation of principal parts.
   a. Infinitive - itself.
   b. Present tense - endings of present tense added to infinitive stem. May also involve vowel change or the addition of an umlaut in second and third persons singular.150
   c. Past tense - change of vowel from infinitive and endings (no endings in first and third persons singular in past tense of strong verbs).
   d. Past participle - by prefixing ge and suffixing en to infinitive stem.151

2. Formation of indicative tenses

---

149 Perfect infinitive - past participle of verb in question plus infinitive of its corresponding auxiliary (haben or sein) - gesagt haben - gegangen sein.

150 When strong verb change vowels the changes are generally as follows: Infinitive a becomes æ in present tense; short e becomes ü in present tense; long e becomes ie in present tense.

151 Verbs having inseparable prefixes (be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, vor, zer) merely suffix en to form past participle. In such verbs the infinitive and past participle look alike unless the verb is one which has vowel change. If verb has separable prefix the ge is inserted between the separable prefix and the stem of the infinitive and en is suffixed to stem (hereingekommen).
V. Verb (cont.)

a. Present tense
   (1) Formed by adding the following endings to stem of infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Past tense\(^{152}\)
   (1) Formed by adding following endings to third principal part of verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Future tense\(^{153}\)
   (1) Formed by adding to werden in present tense the infinitive of verb in question.

d. Conditional tense\(^{153}\)
   (1) Formed by adding to the preterite subjunctive of werden the infinitive of verb.

e. Perfect tenses
   (1) Are formed like perfect tenses of weak verbs. See page 122.

F. Subjunctive mood (weak and strong verbs).
   1. Present tense - Form I.
      a. Formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.\(^{154}\)

---

\(^{152}\) These are same endings as for present tense except for lack of ending in first and third persons singular.

\(^{153}\) The future and conditional tenses are formed in the same way for verbs of both conjugations.

\(^{154}\) There is never a vowel change in the singular of the present subjunctive, Form I, as there is in the indicative present tense of some strong verbs.
V. Verb (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st p.</th>
<th>2nd p.</th>
<th>3rd p.</th>
<th>2nd form.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>$e$</td>
<td>$est$</td>
<td>$e$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>$en$</td>
<td>$et$</td>
<td>$en$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Present tense—Form II (past subjunctive). 155

a. Formed by adding following endings to past indicative stem of verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st p.</th>
<th>2nd p.</th>
<th>3rd p.</th>
<th>2nd form.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>$e$</td>
<td>$est$</td>
<td>$e$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>$en$</td>
<td>$et$</td>
<td>$en$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Subjunctive compound tenses

a. Are formed in the same manner as are the indicative compound tenses except that the auxiliary (werden for future perfect and haben or sein for perfect tenses) are conjugated in the subjunctive mood instead of indicative.

G. Imperative mood.

1. Formation

a. Add following endings to infinitive stem.

   du = $e$ 156
   ihr = $e$
   Sie = $en$; Sie 157

b. Exception 158

   (1) Strong verbs having an $e$ in the infinitive which changes to 1 or $ie$ in the present indicative keep this vowel change in the du form of the imperative and the regular $e$ ending of this du form.

155 It will be noted that the endings of Form I and II are alike, the difference occurs in the choice of stem used. It will also be noted that the imperfect indicative tense of weak verbs and the second form of present subjunctive are identical.

156 In conversational German the $e$ ending of the du form is often dropped.

157 The Sie form of the imperative is the only form which uses the subject pronoun with the imperative verb. (Komm! Kommt! Kommen Sie!)

158 Werden is the one exception. It becomes wird in present tense but has werde! werdet! werden Sie! for its imperative forms.
V. Verb (cont.)

is dropped. This change does not affect the ihr and Sie forms. (sehen becomes sieht in present tense, hence its imperative is seht! sehe! seht! sehen Sie!)

c. Sein has irregular imperative.

Sei! Sei! Seien Sie!

H. Passive voice.

1. Formation:
   a. Formed by conjugated form of werden in desired tense plus the past participle of the verb.

2. Agent expressed.
   a. English by is expressed in German by von if the agent is personal; by durch if the agent is impersonal.

I. Reflexive verbs.

1. Formation.
   a. Reflexive verbs are formed and conjugated as any other verb except a reflexive pronoun corresponding to the subject must be included.159

J. Reciprocal verbs.

1. Formation.
   a. Reciprocal verbs are conjugated as any other verb except that pronoun objects are included. These may be any of the plural forms of the reflexive pronouns or einander which is invariable.

K. Irregular verbs.

1. Orthographical changing verbs.
   a. Some verbs add e before st or t endings. Such verbs are those whose stems end in d, t, m or n (not following a, e, i, o, or a vowel.)160

159 Reflexive verbs form their perfect tenses with haben. (In French all conjugated with être).

160 This is not commonly considered as being an irregularity.
V. Verb (cont.)

b. Some verbs whose stems end in al, er drop this e before the verbal ending e.

   ich sammle

c. Verbs whose stems end in a sibilant (s, ss, sch, z) drop a syllable the second person singular, causing the second and third persons singular to look alike.

   du läßt - er läßt

2. Irregular weak verbs.

a. A few weak verbs change their infinitive vowel in the past tense, and retain the change in the past participle and preterite subjunctive; in other respects they are regular and add the regular tense endings of weak verbs. Such verbs are:

   Infinitive   Past tense   Past Part.
   brennen   brannte   gebrannt
   bringen   brachte   gebracht
   denken   dachte   gedacht
   kennen   kannte   gekannt
   nennen   nannte   genannt
   rennen   rannte   gerannt
   senden162   sandte   gesandt
   wenden163   wandte   gewandt
   wissen164   wusste   gewusst

3. Modals - see page 129.

L. Impersonal verbs.

1. Impersonal verbs are conjugated in the third person singular,165 with the neuter Es as subject pronoun.

   a. Verbs denoting natural phenomena are impersonal.

      es regnet

161 English has an equivalent for these irregular weak verbs - bring - brought.
162 Senden also has regular form - sendete - gesendet.
163 Wenden also has regular form - wendete - gewendet.
164 Wissen is also irregular in the present tense singular (weiss, weiss, weiss).
165 Except as sind.
V. Verb (cont.)

b. Verbs denoting mental or physical status used impersonally may be accompanied by the dative case or accusative case of the person concerned.
   mich dünkt - it seems to me,
methinks.
c. Intransitive verbs may be used impersonally with a reflexive object.
   es handelt sich ums Leben - it's a matter of life.
d. Transitive verbs may be used impersonally with a direct object.
   es gilt das Leben - it's a matter of life.
e. Verbs denoting time are impersonal.
   es ist spät.
f. Es gibt followed by an accusative object is equivalent to the English there is, there are.166
   Es gibt heute.
g. Most verbs may be used impersonally with man as subject.
   man sagt.
h. The following verbs used impersonally take an accusative object.
   es freut mich
   es gibt Leute
   es dauert mir
   es gefällt mir
   es scheint mir
   es tut mir leid
   
   i. The following verbs used impersonally take a dative object.
   es geht mir
   es fehlt mir
   es gelingt mir
   es ist mir
   es kann mir
   es tut mir leid
   
M. Past participle.

166 Conjugated forms of sein in third person singular or plural (Es ist, es sind) replace geben (es gibt) if the object is a concrete thing limited in time and place (es ist ein Dieb im Hause).

167 Most of these verbs may also take a personal subject.
V. Verb (cont.)

1. The past participle of a part of a verb is invariable. Past participles in German are inflected only when used as attributive adjectives.

W. Present participle.

1. When used as an attributive adjective has full adjectival inflection.

O. Modal auxiliaries.

1. The modal auxiliaries are conjugated irregularly. They are conjugated like weak verbs except in the present tense indicative.\[168\]

2. Principal parts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>I. Past Part.</th>
<th>II. Past Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dürfen</td>
<td>darf</td>
<td>durfte</td>
<td>gedurft</td>
<td>dürfen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>können</td>
<td>kann</td>
<td>konnte</td>
<td>gekonnt</td>
<td>können</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mögen</td>
<td>mag</td>
<td>mochte</td>
<td>gemocht</td>
<td>mögen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>müssen</td>
<td>muss</td>
<td>musste</td>
<td>gemußt</td>
<td>müssen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sollen</td>
<td>soll</td>
<td>sollte</td>
<td>gesollt</td>
<td>sollen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wollen</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>wollte</td>
<td>gewollt</td>
<td>wollen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Present tense.\[169\]

a. All the modals retain their vowel change and have endings in the present tense like dürfen.

ich darf    wir dürfen
du darfst   ihr dürft
er darf     sie dürfen
Sie dürfen  Sie dürfen

P. Formation of compound verbs.

1. With prefixes.

a. Separable prefixes.

(1) Formed by adding prefixes to already existing verb forms. These

---

\[168\] The modals have two past participles. The first form is formed as any past participle of a weak verb. The second form is identical with the infinitive (gedürft - dürfen). The uses will be explained on page 249, note 20.

\[169\] The vowel change in the present tense is retained throughout the singular but in the plural the vowel is identical, even as to umlaut, with the infinitive vowel. No modal has an umlaut in the past tense or in the past participle form I.
V. Verb (cont.)

Prefixes are attached to the verb in transposed word order, in the infinitive and past participle. In other cases they are separated and stand at the end of the clause. Such prefixes are, in the main, adverbs. A list of some of these prefixes is:

- an
- ab
- aus
- mit
- herein
- heraus
- herauf

b. Inseparable prefixes.

(1) Formed by adding a prefix to an already existing verb. These prefixes may never be separated from the verb. Such prefixes are be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, vor, zer.

c. Doubtful prefixes.

(1) Durch, über, um, unter, wieder are sometimes separable and sometimes inseparable. If the prefix receives the stress in pronunciation it may be separated, if not it is inseparable (übersetzen, stressing the über is separable and its principal parts are written as follows:

übersetzen - setzte über - übergesetzt. This verb means to cross over. Übersetzen stressing the setzt syllable is inseparable and its principal parts are written, übersetzen - übersetzte - übersetzt. This verb means to translate.)

2. With nouns.

a. By prefixing a noun to an already existing verb.

teilnehmen

3. With adjectives or adverbial phrases.

a. By prefixing the word to an already existing verb.

auseinandersetzen.
I. Article.

A. Definite.
   1. Declension
      | Singular       | Plural
      | Masculine      | Feminine | los | las
      | el             | la       |
   2. Contraction
      a. The masculine singular definite article contracts with *de* and *a*, as follows:
         a + el = al
         de + el = del

B. Indefinite
   1. Declension
      | Singular       | Plural
      | Masculine      | Feminine | unos | unas
      | un             | una      |
   2. Contraction
      a. The indefinite article does not contract.

C. Neuter article.
   1. Lo - invariable.

II. Substantives.

A. Pronouns
   1. Personal pronouns
      | Singular
      | 1st p. 2nd fam. 2nd form. 3d mas. 3d fem. 3d neut.
      | Nom. yo tu usted él ella ello
      | Gen. (de mí)(de ti) (de usted)(de él) (de ella)
      | Dat. me te usted le172 le172

---

170 The feminine definite article does not contract nor does the masculine plural. As in French, *de* and *a* are the only prepositions causing contraction.

171 *Un*, *una* do not have true plural forms. *Unos* and *unas* mean *some*.

172 In a double pronoun construction, *le* and *les* (dative) are replaced by *se* if both pronouns (indirect and direct objects) are of the third person (se los dió).
## II. Substantives (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st p.</th>
<th>2nd fam.</th>
<th>2nd form.</th>
<th>3rd mas.</th>
<th>3rd fem.</th>
<th>3rd neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>usted</td>
<td>le, lo</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>lo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prep.</td>
<td>mí</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>usted</td>
<td>el</td>
<td>ella</td>
<td>ello</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st masc.</th>
<th>1st fem.</th>
<th>2nd masc.</th>
<th>2nd fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>nosotras</td>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>vosotras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. (de nosotros)</td>
<td>(de nosotras)</td>
<td>(de vosotros)</td>
<td>(de vosotras)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nos</td>
<td>nos</td>
<td>os</td>
<td>os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nos</td>
<td>nos</td>
<td>os</td>
<td>os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prep.</td>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>nosotras</td>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>vosotras</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2. Demonstrative pronouns.

- **a.** *este* (this), *ése* (that), *aquél* (the one)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>este</td>
<td>esta</td>
<td>esto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ése</td>
<td>esa</td>
<td>eso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aquel</td>
<td>aquella</td>
<td>aquello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>estos</td>
<td>estas</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>esos</td>
<td>esas</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aquellos</td>
<td>aquellas</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>los</td>
<td>las</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

173 The prepositional forms mí, ti, etc., are comparable to the French disjunctives. Mi, ti and si after con become conmigo, contigo, consigo.

174 Spanish is the only language which distinguishes for gender in the first and second persons plural.

175 Este and aquéllo also translate the English latter and former, respectively.

176 The neuter pronouns never refer to tangible objects but to ideas, statements.

177 The demonstrative pronoun *el* is declined like the definite article.
II. Substantives (cont.)

3. Interrogative pronouns

a. **Quién** - who

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quién</td>
<td>quiénes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>de quién</td>
<td>de quiénes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>a quién</td>
<td>a quiénes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quién</td>
<td>quiénes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. **Cual** - which

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cual</td>
<td>cuáles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>de cual</td>
<td>de cuáles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>a cual</td>
<td>a cuáles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cual</td>
<td>cuáles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. **Qué** - what

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular and Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>qué</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>de qué</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>a qué</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>qué</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. **Cuyo** - whose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc.</td>
<td>cuyo</td>
<td>cuyos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem.</td>
<td>cuya</td>
<td>cuyas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. **Cuanto** - how much

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc.</td>
<td>cuanto</td>
<td>cuántos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem.</td>
<td>cuánta</td>
<td>cuántas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Indefinite pronouns

a. Are inflected only as to number and gender.

1. **Alguien** - somebody - invariable.
2. **Alguno** - someone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc.</td>
<td>alguno</td>
<td>algunos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem.</td>
<td>alguna</td>
<td>algunas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Algo** - something - invariable.
4. **Alguna persona** - somebody - invariable.
5. **Ambos** - both.

178 Unlike the other languages, Spanish has plural forms for the interrogative pronoun translating English who, French qui, and German wer.

179 The interrogative pronouns are distinguished from the relative pronouns by the accent marks. It will be noted inflection occurs only with reference to number, not gender or case. Case is shown by the use of preposition.

180 Seldom used.
II. Substantives (cont.)

(6) Cada uno - each.
   (a) Has feminine cada una.
(7) Cualquiera - anybody whatsoever - invariable.
(8) Cualquiera persona - anybody at all - invariable.
(9) Nadie - nobody - invariable.
(10) Ninguno - nobody.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. ninguno</td>
<td>ningunos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. ninguna</td>
<td>ningunas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(11) Ninguna persona - no one - invariable.
(12) Todo el mundo - everyone - invariable.
(13) Nada - nothing - invariable.
(14) Uno - one - invariable.
(15) Unos - some - has feminine unas.
(16) Cualquier cosa - anything at all - invariable.
(17) Ninguna cosa - nothing at all - invariable.
(18) Todo - everything.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. todo</td>
<td>todos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. toda</td>
<td>todas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(19) Poco - few

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. poco</td>
<td>pocos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. poca</td>
<td>pocas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Relative pronouns.
   a. Que - invariable.
   b. Quien - uninflected as to gender.\(^\text{181}\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quien</td>
<td>quienes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. de quien</td>
<td>de quienes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. a quien</td>
<td>a quienes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. a quien</td>
<td>a quienes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. El (la) cual - agree in number and gender with antecedent.\(^\text{182}\)

\(^{181}\) The case is not shown by inflection but by prepositions.

\(^{182}\) Comparable to French lequel and German der.
II. Substantives (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>el cual183</td>
<td>la cual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>del cual</td>
<td>de la cual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>al cual</td>
<td>a la cual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cual</td>
<td>cual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>los cuales</td>
<td>las cuales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>de los cuales</td>
<td>de las cuales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a los cuales</td>
<td>a las cuales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>los cuales</td>
<td>las cuales</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Lo cual - invariable neuter,184
e. Lo que - invariable neuter,184
f. Cuyo - agrees with noun it modifies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc.</td>
<td>cuyo</td>
<td>cuyos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem.</td>
<td>cuya</td>
<td>cuyas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

g. El (la) que - agree with antecedent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>el que185</td>
<td>la que185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>del que185</td>
<td>de la que185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>al que185</td>
<td>a la que185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>que</td>
<td>la que185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>los que</td>
<td>las que187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>de los que</td>
<td>de las que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a los que</td>
<td>a las que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>los que</td>
<td>las que187</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Possessive186

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>los que</td>
<td>las que187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>de los que</td>
<td>de las que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>a los que</td>
<td>a las que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>los que</td>
<td>las que187</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

183 Contracts to al cual or del cual when used with prepositions a or de.
184 Do not refer to persons or things but to ideas or statements.
185 Contraction of article plus de or a.
186 Unlike English, but like French and German, the possessive pronoun agrees in number and gender with the thing possessed. It agrees with the possessor in person only.
187 The definite article with possessive pronouns is omitted after ser (Es mio).
II. Substantives (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>el mio</td>
<td>la mia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>el tuyo</td>
<td>la tuya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>el suyo</td>
<td>la suya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>el nuestro</td>
<td>la nuestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>el vuestro</td>
<td>la vuestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>el suyo</td>
<td>la suya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>los mis</td>
<td>las mis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>los tuyos</td>
<td>las tuyas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>los muestros</td>
<td>las muestras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>los suyos</td>
<td>las suyas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>los vuestros</td>
<td>las vuestras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>los suyos</td>
<td>las suyas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Declension of 188

All of the above are declined as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>el mio</td>
<td>la mia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>del mio</td>
<td>de la mia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>al mio</td>
<td>a la mia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>el mio</td>
<td>la mia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>los mis</td>
<td>las mis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>de los mis</td>
<td>de las mis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>a los mis</td>
<td>a las mis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>los mis</td>
<td>las mis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Reflexive pronouns 190

me
te
se
nos
os
se

---

188 Since el suyo may mean your, his, hers, its, for clarity a prepositional phrase (el de el, el de ella, etc.) is often substituted for the el suyo form.

189 The case is not shown by inflectional endings but by prepositions, as in French.

190 Reflexive pronouns also have the emphatic forms a mi mismo, a ti mismo, etc.
II. Substantives (cont.)

8. Reciprocal pronouns
   a. Nos - os - se, invariable.
   b. Uno a otro - each other.
      Singular       Plural
      Masc. uno a otro unos a otros
      Fem. una a otra unas a otras
   c. El uno al otro - each other.
      Singular       Plural
      Masc. el uno al otro los unos a los otros
      Fem. la una a la otra las unas a las otras

B. Noun.
   1. Inflection as to gender.
      a. When the ending does not signify the gender (o for masculine, a for feminine), the article will show the gender of Spanish nouns.
      b. In many cases, as in the other languages, the feminine equivalent to a masculine noun is an entirely different word.
         el hombre - la mujer
      c. As in English and French, a modifier (macho - male, hembra - female) may be used with the noun to signify its gender. The use of these modifiers does not change the gender of the noun with which it is used.
         la zorra macho - male fox
         la zorra hembra - female fox
      d. Some masculine nouns not ending in a may be made feminine merely by changing the article gender.
         el joven - la joven
         el mártir - la mártir
      e. Masculine nouns ending in a may form feminine by merely changing the gender of the article.
         el artista - la artista
      f. Masculine nouns ending in o change o to a to form the feminine equivalent.
         el niño - la niña

191. Macho and hembra are invariable.
II. Substantives (cont.)

g. Masculine nouns ending in e change the e to a to form the feminine equivalent.
el monje - la monja

h. Most masculine nouns ending in d, l, n, r, s, z, add a to complete masculine noun to form the feminine.
el autor - la autora
el huésped - la huéspeda

i. Many nouns add essa to the complete masculine noun to form the feminine equivalent.
el conde - la condesa

j. A few feminine nouns are formed by adding essa to the masculine noun.
el poeta - la poetisa

k. Some nouns have double gender, the meaning changing as the gender changes.
el capital - money
la capital - capital city

l. Some feminine nouns ending in a which denote things, may be applied to persons and take either masculine or feminine article.
la guía - guide (object)
el (la) guía - guide (person)

2. Inflection as to number.
a. The plural of all Spanish nouns ends in s.
b. Nouns ending in a diphthong or an unaccented vowel add a to the singular form.
el caballo - los caballos
el indio - los indios
c. Nouns ending in a consonant add essa to form the plural.192
la flor - las flores
d. Polysyllabic nouns ending in an accented e, o or u, add a to form the plural.193
el tisu - los tisús

192 If the final consonant is c, the c becomes qu before adding essa in order to preserve the hard sound of the c. Final e is changed to e before the plural essa (el frac - los fraques, la cruz - las cruces).

193 El pie also forms its plural in this manner (el pie - los pies).
II. Substantives (cont.)

f. Nouns ending in a or i or an unaccented diphthong ending in y, add es to form the plural.194
   el rey - los reyes

g. Names of the letters of the alphabet add es in the plural.
   las aes

h. Polysyllabic nouns ending in is or es and family names ending in an unaccented e do not change to form the plural.
   la crisis - las crisis
   Martinez - los Martinez

i. Nouns ending in stressed i add es
   el rubí - los rubíes

3. Inflection as to case.
   a. Spanish nouns are invariable with reference to case. As in English and French, the case must be shown by the use of prepositions.195

   a. Compound nouns.
      (1) Stem of verb plus noun.
         el pasatiempo
      (2) Noun and adjective.
         la enhorabuena
      (3) Combinations of other parts of speech.
         los quehaceres - verb and relative pronoun.
         la razón - adverb and noun.
         el hazmerelo - imperative plus object pronoun plus infinitive.

   b. Infinitives may be used as nouns with no change in form.
      el andar

   c. Old present participles derived from Latin may be used as nouns with no change in form.
      el amante

194 Exception: Foreign words such as el papa, la mama merely add e - los papas, las mamás.

195 English does have one case ending - the apostrophe and s of the genitive.
II. Substantives (cont.)

d. Adjectives of nationality are used to form nouns of languages.
   el Español

e. Adjectives may be used as nouns with no change of form.
   el joven - la joven

5. Diminutive endings.

a. There are four different forms for each diminutive ending. These forms are used according to the following rules.196

1.2.3.4.

Dear
Angel
Bélittling
Contempt
Depreciative

ito cito ecito escacito
ico cico ecico escacico
illo cillo ecillo escacillo
uelo seueto escueito escueulo
eto ceto eceto eceto

(1) Those suffixes listed under 1. above are used with most of the nouns that do not take the other endings, as follows.
   abuelo - abuelito, etc.

(2) Those suffixes listed under 2. above are used with polysyllabic words ending in n or r.
   jovem - jovencete

(3) Those suffixes listed under 3. above are used with monosyllabic words ending in y or a consonant.
   flor - florcita, etc.

(4) Those suffixes listed under 4. above are used with monosyllabic words ending in a vowel.
   pie - piecito

b. Other diminutive suffixes.

Largeness
Contempt
Depreciative
Large size

on - ona (mujeroná)
ajo - aja (animalajo)
icho - ucha (animalucho)
azo - aza (hombrazo)
uco - uca (casuca)

196 All the diminutive endings have regular inflection - masculine and feminine forms - singular and plural.
197 Ico and its forms also are used to express sarcasm.
198 Any vowel except y.
199 Azo is also used to denote means or a physical act (latigo - a whip; latigazo - the sting of a whip).
III. Adjective.

The adjective must agree in gender and number with the noun it modifies.

A. Inflection as to gender.

1. Feminine adjectives are formed from masculine adjectives in the following manners.
   a. Masculine adjective ending in o changes o to a.
      bonito - bonita
   b. Masculine adjective ending in an or on adds a.
      holgazán - holgazana
   c. Masculine adjective ending in or, not having comparative value, add a.
      hablador - habladora
   d. The masculine diminutive endings eta and eta become eta and eta.
   e. Masculine adjectives of nationality ending in a consonant add a.
      español - española
   f. Masculine adjectives ending in a consonant except in those cases already mentioned, and masculine adjectives ending in any vowel except o remain unchanged.
      azul - azul, verde - verde

B. Inflection as to number.

1. Adjectives ending in a vowel in the singular add s to form the plural.
   bonito - bonitos
2. Adjectives ending in a consonant in the singular add es to form the plural.
   joven - jóvenes
3. The same rules which govern the formation of the plural for nouns govern the formation of the plural for adjectives.

C. Apocopation of adjectives.

1. Bueno and malo drop the final o when immediately followed by masculine singular nouns.
   un buen hombre
2. Grande meaning importance and not size, drops the de when immediately followed by masculine singular nouns.

200 Unless the noun begins with h or a vowel.
III. Adjectives (cont.)

3. Santo as a title of holy beings drops to unless the following proper name begins with To or Do.

San Pedro

4. Alguno and ninguno drop the final o when immediately followed by masculine singular nouns.

ningún dinero

5. Uno, primero, tercero, posrero drop the final o when immediately followed by a masculine singular noun.

el primer asunto

6. Ciento drops the to when immediately followed by mil or millón (cien mil) or when it is immediately followed by a noun.

cien hombres

7. Cualquiera and cualesquiera drop the a before a noun, masculine or feminine, cualquiera hombre, cualquiera mujer

8. Cuanto drops to before an adjective or ad-

verb.

cuán dulce

D. Inflection as to case.

1. There is no inflection for case in Spanish.

E. Demonstrative adjectives.

Este (this), ese (that), aquel (that)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>este</td>
<td>esta</td>
<td>estos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ese</td>
<td>esa</td>
<td>esos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquel</td>
<td>aquella</td>
<td>aquellos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

201 In order to keep the stress, the dropping of the final vowel necessitates the accent mark.

202 The use of cuanto or cuan in such phrases is less common than qué - ¡qué dulce!

203 Demonstrative adjectives agree in number and gender with the noun. They must be repeated before each noun they modify (as in French and German).

204 Este and aquel and ese - este denotes what is near the speaker, ese denotes what is near the person spoken to, aquel denotes what is remote from both.
### III. Adjectives (cont.)

#### F. Possessive adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>My</strong></td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Your</strong></td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Its, her</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>His, your</strong></td>
<td>su206</td>
<td>su206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Our</strong></td>
<td>nuestro</td>
<td>nuestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Your</strong></td>
<td>vuestro</td>
<td>vuestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Their</strong></td>
<td>su206</td>
<td>su206</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### G. Indefinite adjectives

1. **Algo** - somewhat - invariable
2. **Alguno** - some

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alguño</strong></td>
<td>alguno</td>
<td>alguna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Algunos</strong></td>
<td>algunos</td>
<td>algunas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Cada** - each - invariable
4. **Cierta** - certain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cierta</strong></td>
<td>cierto</td>
<td>cierta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ciertos</strong></td>
<td>ciertos</td>
<td>ciertas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. **Ambos** - both - no singular
6. **Mucho** - many

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mucho</strong></td>
<td>mucho</td>
<td>mucha</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Muchos</strong></td>
<td>muchos</td>
<td>muchas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. **Otro** - other

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Otro</strong></td>
<td>otro</td>
<td>otra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Otros</strong></td>
<td>otros</td>
<td>otras</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. **Poco** - few

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Poco</strong></td>
<td>poco</td>
<td>poca</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Masc.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pocos</strong></td>
<td>pocos</td>
<td>pocas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

205 Unlike the French possessive adjective but like the German, the Spanish has both masculine and plural forms for the possessive adjective. Like the other languages but unlike English, the possessive adjective agrees in person only with the possessor. The number and gender of the possessive adjective depend upon the object possessed.

206 Since *su* has so many meanings, the phrase *de él, de ella, etc.*, is often used.

207 **Algo** applies to things and modifies adjectives. *(Busco algo blanco)*.
III. Adjectives (cont.)

9. Tal (such) - same for masculine and feminine.
   Singular - tal, plural - tales.

10. Todo - every, all.
   Singular   Plural
   Masc. todo todos
   Fem. toda todas

11. Único - only, single.
   Singular   Plural
   Masc. único únicos
   Fem. única únicas

12. Varios - several - no singular.
   Masculine - varios, feminine - varias

   Singular   Plural
   Masc. uno unos
   Fem. una unas

H. Interrogative adjectives.203
1. Qué? - what, which - invariable.
   Singular - cuál, plural cuáles

3. Cuyo? - whose
   Singular   Plural
   Masc. cuyo cuyos
   Fem. cuya cuyas

4. Cuánto - how much, how many.
   Singular   Plural
   Masc. cuánto cuantos
   Fem. cuánta cuántas

I. Degrees.
1. Comparative.209
   a. Is formed by placing más before the positive form.210
   bonito - más bonito

203 As in French, the Spanish interrogative adjectives may have exclamatory force (Que ideal!)

209 As in French, the Spanish has no true comparative and superlative degrees, i.e., where the words change form to denote the different degrees. The degree is shown by modifiers. English then is translated by que unless a clause follows, when de lo que before a numeral is de.

210 Más is the equivalent to English more, menos to less, tan... como to as... as.
III. Adjectives (cont.)

b. Is formed by placing menos before the positive form.
   bonito - menos bonito

c. Is formed by placing tan before the positive adjective and como after it.
   bonito - tan bonito como

2. Superlative.
   a. Is formed in the same manner as the comparative form, with addition of an article.
      bonito - mas bonito - el mas bonito.

3. Irregular comparisons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bueno</td>
<td>mayor</td>
<td>mayor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malo</td>
<td>peor</td>
<td>peor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grande</td>
<td>mas grande</td>
<td>mas grande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pequeno</td>
<td>mas pequeno</td>
<td>mas pequeno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menor</td>
<td>menor</td>
<td>menor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Miscellaneous comparisons.
   a. Of nouns - use tanto (os), tanta (as) before noun and como after.
      tantos amigos como
   b. Of clauses - use cuanto más...tanto más.
      cuanto menos...tanto menos
      Cuanto más trabaja, tanto más gana.

5. Substitutes for comparative degrees.
   a. Use of superlative modifying words such as muy.
   b. Use of superlative suffix isimo (isima - isimos) on adjective after dropping final vowel of the adjective.
      corto - cortísimo

J. Numerals

1. Cardinals - are invariable except uno which has regular adjectival inflection and ciento212 and its compounds.

211 Grandes and pequeños have regular comparative and superlative forms when referring to size. The irregular form denotes importance or age (comparable to French).

212 Ciento drops to before a noun or mil (cien mil hombres, cien hombres).
III. Adjectives (cont.)

2. Ordinals - have full adjectival inflection and agree as any adjective.
   la primera parte.

K. Formation of adjectives.
1. Use of preposition and noun.
   de oro - golden
2. Use of past participle plus de plus a noun.
   cubierto de musgo
3. Noun and adjective compounded into one word.
   pelo and largo - pelilargo
4. Past participles used as adjective with no change in form.
5. Use of re prefix to intensify the meaning.
   difícil - difficult
   redifícil - very difficult
6. Use if isimo suffix to denote superlative force.
   corto - cortísimo
7. Formation of adjectives from names of geographical places by means of suffix such as ano, ino, eno, eco, etc.
   Madrid - Madrileño

IV. Adverb.

A. Degrees.
1. Comparative.
   a. By use of más before positive form.
      más fácilmente
   b. By use of menos before positive form.
      menos fácilmente
   c. By use of tan before positive form and como after.
      tan fácilmente como.
2. Superlative.
   a. Formed in same way as the comparative.
3. Irregular comparisons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bien</td>
<td>mejor</td>
<td>mejor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal</td>
<td>peor</td>
<td>peor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poco</td>
<td>menos</td>
<td>menos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mucho</td>
<td>más</td>
<td>más</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

213 As in French and German.
214 The English than is translated by que, as with comparative forms of adjectives.
IV. Adverb (cont.)

4. Substitutes for.
   a. Use of superlative modifier such as muy.
      muy tercamente
   b. Use of neuter article lo.
      lo más pronto posible
   c. Add isima to adjective before adding
      prontisimamente

B. Formation of adverbs.
   1. By addition of suffix mente to feminine adjective.
      clara - claramente
   2. By addition of mente to adjectives ending in consonant.
      leal - lealmente
   3. By means of a phrase.
      con cuidado
   4. Adjectives having a distinct form for the feminine cannot take suffix mente. Adverbs of such adjectives are formed by using the phrase de una manera followed by the adjective.
      de una manera pregunta
   5. A few pronouns are used as adverbs with no change in form.
      algo - somewhat, nada - not at all.
   6. Some adjectives do not change when used adverbially.
      alto, claro
   7. Some nouns may be used adverbially with no change in form.
      mañana
   8. Adjectives having no separate form for the feminine add mente.
      libremenete

---

215 In a series of adverbs ending in mente only the last has the suffix (libre y lealmente - freely and loyally).
216 I.e., adjectives ending in a consonant which add a to form the feminine form. Leal is either masculine or feminine, hence an adverb may be formed by suffixing mente. Holgazón adds a for the feminine, hence cannot have mente suffixed to form the adverb.
V. Verb

The verb agrees with the subject in number and person. As in other languages, no distinction is made for sex.

A. Principal parts
1. Infinitive - hablar
2. Past participle - hablado
3. Present participle - hablando

B. Formation of the tenses.
1. From infinitive stem.
   a. Present tense indicative and subjunctive.
   b. Imperfect tense indicative and subjunctive.
   c. Preterite tense indicative and subjunctive.
   d. Future subjunctive.
2. From complete infinitive.
   a. Future indicative.
   b. Conditional tense.
3. Past participle.
   a. All perfect tenses - indicative and subjunctive.
4. Present participle.
   a. All progressive tenses.

C. Number of conjugations (three).
1. First conjugation - ar verbs.
2. Second conjugation - er verbs.
3. Third conjugation - ir verbs.

D. First conjugation (ar verbs).
1. Formation of principal parts.
   a. Infinitive - itself.
   b. Past participle - formed by adding ado to infinitive stem.
   c. Present participle - formed by adding ando to infinitive stem.

---

217 In Spanish unlike all the other languages, it is not necessary to include the subject pronoun. In fact it is more common not to unless it is necessary to make the meaning clear or for emphasis.
V. Verb (cont.)

2. Indicative tenses.
   a. Present tense - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b. Imperfect tense - formed by adding the following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>aba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>abas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>aba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>aba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   c. Preterite tense - formed by adding the following endings to the infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>aste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   d. Future tense - formed by adding the following endings to complete infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   e. Conditional tense - formed by adding the following endings to complete infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>fa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>fas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>fa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   f. Perfect tenses.

   (1) All perfect tenses are formed by the use of the conjugated form of haber in the corresponding tense plus the past participle.

---

218 The future and conditional tense endings are the same for all conjugations.
V. Verb (cont.)

of the verb in question.

(a) Present perfect - haber conjugated in present tense plus past participle of verb.

(b) Pluperfect - haber conjugated in imperfect tense plus past participle of verb.

(c) Preterite perfect - haber conjugated in preterite tense plus past participle of verb.

(d) Future perfect - haber conjugated in future tense plus past participle of verb.

(e) Conditional perfect - haber conjugated in conditional tense plus past participle of verb.

E. Second conjugation (er verbs).

1. Formation of principal parts.
   a. Infinitive - itself.
   b. Past participle - add *ido* to infinitive stem. 219
   c. Present participle - add *iendo* to infinitive stem. 220

2. Indicative tenses.
   a. Present tense - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.
      
      | Singular | Plural |
      |-----------|--------|
      | 1st p.    | o      | emos   |
      | 2nd p.    | es     | éis    |
      | 3rd p.    | e      | en     |
      | 2nd form. | e      | en     |

   b. Imperfect tense - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem. 221

---

219 Past participles of second and third conjugation verbs are formed alike.

220 Present participles of second and third conjugation verbs are formed in same manner.

221 Second and third conjugation verbs have same endings in imperfect tense.
### V. Verb (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td>iamos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ias</td>
<td>iais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td>ian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td>ian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**c. Preterite tense** - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>imos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ieste</td>
<td>isteis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>io</td>
<td>ieron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>io</td>
<td>ieron</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**d. Future tense** - formed by adding the following endings to the complete infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>soemos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>és</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>án</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>án</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**e. Conditional tense** - formed by adding the following endings to the complete infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td>iamos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ias</td>
<td>iais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td>ian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td>ian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**f. Perfect tenses** - are formed in same manner for all conjugations. For details see page 149.

---

**F. Third conjugation (ir verbs).**

1. Formation of principal parts.
   a. Infinitive - itself.
   b. Past participle - add ido to infinitive stem.
   c. Present participle - add iendo to infinitive stem.

---

222 Second and third conjugation verbs have same endings in preterite tense.

223 Same endings for all conjugations.

224 Same as for second conjugation verbs.
V. Verb (cont.)

2. Indicative tenses.
   a. Present tense - add following endings to infinitive stem.

       | Singular | Plural |
       |----------|--------|
       | 1st p.   | o      | imos  |
       | 2nd p.   | es     | is    |
       | 3rd p.   | e      | en    |
       | 2nd form.| e      | en    |

   b. Imperfect tense - add following endings to infinitive stem.

       | Singular | Plural |
       |----------|--------|
       | 1st p.   | ia     | iamos |
       | 2nd p.   | ias    | iais  |
       | 3rd p.   | ia     | ian   |
       | 2nd form.| ia     | ian   |

   c. Preterite tense - add following endings to infinitive stem.

       | Singular | Plural |
       |----------|--------|
       | 1st p.   | i      | imos  |
       | 2nd p.   | iate   | iates |
       | 3rd p.   | io     | ieron |
       | 2nd form.| io     | ieron |

   d. Future tense - add following endings to complete infinitive.

       | Singular | Plural |
       |----------|--------|
       | 1st p.   | e      | emos  |
       | 2nd p.   | as     | ais   |
       | 3rd p.   | a      | an    |
       | 2nd form.| a      | an    |

   e. Conditional tense - add following endings to complete infinitive.

       | Singular | Plural |
       |----------|--------|
       | 1st p.   | ia     | iamos |
       | 2nd p.   | ias    | iais  |
       | 3rd p.   | ia     | ian   |
       | 2nd form.| ia     | ian   |

   f. Perfect tenses.

      (1) Are formed in same manner as for first conjugation verbs.
      For details see page 149.

---

225 Imperfect tense has same endings for second and third conjugation verbs.
226 Preterite tense has same endings for second and third conjugation verbs.
227 Same for all conjugations.
V. Verb (cont.)

G. Progressive tenses 228

1. Formed by conjugated form of estar in corresponding tense (present for present progressive, imperfect for past progressive, etc.) plus the present participle of the verb in question.

   - estoy corriendo, estaba corriendo, etc.

H. Subjunctive mood 229

1. First conjugation (ar verbs)

   a. Present tense, subjunctive - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>emos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>éis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b. Imperfect subjunctive - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ara</td>
<td>áramos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>aras</td>
<td>arais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>ara</td>
<td>aran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>ara</td>
<td>aran</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   c. Preterite subjunctive - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>ase</td>
<td>ásemos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ases</td>
<td>aseis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>ase</td>
<td>asen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>ase</td>
<td>asen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   d. Future subjunctive - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem. 230

---

228 Only English and Spanish have progressive tenses.

229 Unlike French, the subjunctive mood in Spanish has two sets of endings - one for first conjugation verbs and one for the second and third.

230 The future subjunctive is almost obsolete, although some grammarians claim it still is used for certain purposes. See page 214. It will be noted that the endings for the future subjunctive are similar to those of the imperfect subjunctive, the difference being the final a of the imperfect subjunctive changing to e in the future subjunctive.
V. Verb (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>aremos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ares</td>
<td>areis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>aren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>aren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. Perfect tenses of subjunctive - are formed with the conjugated form of haber 231 in the corresponding subjunctive tense plus the past participle of the verb in question.

1. Present perfect subjunctive - haber conjugated in present subjunctive plus past participle of verb.
2. Pluperfect subjunctive - haber conjugated in imperfect subjunctive plus past participle of verb.
3. Preterite perfect subjunctive - haber conjugated in preterite subjunctive plus past participle of verb.

2. Subjunctive of second and third conjugations.
a. Present tense subjunctive - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>amos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>isis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>an</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Imperfect subjunctive - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>iera</td>
<td>ieramos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ieras</td>
<td>ieraiis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>iera</td>
<td>ieran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>iera</td>
<td>ieran</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

231 Cf. Irregular conjugation of haber.
V. Verb (cont.)

c. Preterite subjunctive - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>iese</td>
<td>ñiñemos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ieses</td>
<td>iesen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>iese</td>
<td>iesen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>iese</td>
<td>iesen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Future subjunctive - formed by adding following endings to infinitive stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st p.</td>
<td>iere</td>
<td>ñiero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd p.</td>
<td>ieres</td>
<td>ieren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd p.</td>
<td>iere</td>
<td>ieren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd form.</td>
<td>iere</td>
<td>ieren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. Perfect subjunctive tenses - are formed as for first conjugation verbs. For details see page 154.

I. Imperative.

1. Formation of.

a. The true imperative exists only for the familiar forms tu and vosotros (vosotras). The tu form is taken from the third person singular of the present indicative tense (compró). The vosotros form is formed by adding 1 to the tu form (comprad).  

b. The usted and ustedes forms are borrowed from the present subjunctive (Compre Vd!; Compren Vds!)  

c. Indirect imperative (translated by English, Let us...) is expressed by the present subjunctive (Compremos!).  

d. All negative commands are borrowed from the present subjunctive (No compras! - tu; No compreis! - vosotros; No compre Vd!; No compren Vds!).

232 As is the case with first conjugation verbs, the second and third conjugation verbs' future subjunctive tense endings resemble their imperfect subjunctive endings. The difference is the final a of the imperative becoming e in future.

233 The subject pronoun is included in the imperative only with the formal pronouns usted and ustedes.
V. Verb (cont.)

e. Reflexive verbs (1) drop the final a of the imperative ending before attaching the reflexive pronoun (¡sentamamos!) and (2) drop the d before os (¡sentáos!)

J. Passive voice.234

1. Formation of.

a. In Spanish the true passive voice is formed by use of ser conjugated in desired tense plus past participle of verb in question (which agrees in person and number with the subject.)

b. Reflexive passive (no agent expressed).

(1) Animate subject - formed by the reflexive pronoun which corresponds to the verb, plus the direct object pronoun which corresponds to subject and the third person singular of the verb, conjugated in desired tense. (Se los mató - they were killed).

(2) Inanimate subject - formed by the reflexive pronoun which corresponds to the subject and the verb which agrees in person and number with the subject. (Se venden libros - books are sold).

(3) Impersonal passive - formed by reflexive pronoun se and verb in third person singular or plural. (Se dice (dicen) que él es rico).

(4) Idiomatic passive to express desire - formed by reflexive pronoun se and verb in third person singular or plural followed by an infinitive. (¿Se puede (pueden) entrar?)

234 In Spanish the agent must be expressed to have true passive voice.

235 Always se.

236 With animate subject the verb must be in third person singular form.
V. Verb (cont.)

2. Agent expressed.
   a. The English by is translated by por
      if the verb denotes a physical act.
      If the verb denotes a mental act by
      is translated by de. 237

K. Reflexive verbs.
   1. Formation.
      a. Reflexive verbs are formed and conju-
         gated as any verb except that the re-
         flexive pronoun, corresponding to the
         subject, must be included in all forms.

L. Reciprocal verbs.
   1. Formation of.
      a. Reciprocal verbs are formed and conju-
         gated as any verb except that the ob-
         ject pronouns corresponding to the
         subject are included with the verb.
         These pronouns may be any of the plu-
         ral reflexive pronouns or el uno al
         otro (la una a la otra) or uno a otro
         (una a otra).

M. Irregular verbs.
   1. Orthographical changing verbs.
      a. Radical changing verbs - there are
         three classes of radical changing
         verbs.
         (1) Class I.
           Infinitive - ar, er.
           Change - e to ie or o to ue
           Where = 1st, 2nd, 3rd person
           Singular and 3rd per-
           son plural - present
           indicative and sub-
           junctive.
           Singular - imperative.
           When = Final vowel of stem is
           stressed.
           Examples = cerrar, perder.

237 Comparable to French.
V. Verb (cont.)

(2) Class II (2 changes occur to all verbs.

First change

Infinitive - ir.

Change - e to ie or o to ue.

Where - 1st, 2nd, 3rd person

Singular - present indicative and subjunctive.

3rd person Plural - present indicative and subjunctive.

Singular - imperative.

Examples - sentir, dormir.

When - Under stress.

Second change

Infinitive - ir.

Change - e to i or o to u.

Where - Present participle.

1st, 2nd person Plural - present subjunctive.

3rd person singular and plural - preterite indicative.

Throughout imperfect and preterite subjunctive.

Examples - sentir, dormir.

When - Not stressed if following syllable contains a, ie, or io.

(3) Class III.

Infinitive - ir.

Change - e to i.

Where - 1st, 2nd, 3rd Singular,

3rd Plural - present indicative.

Singular - imperative.

All present subjunctive.

Present participle.

3rd person Singular and Plural - preterite indicative.

All imperfect and preterite subjunctive.

When - Under stress and when not stressed if follow-

ing syllable has a, ie or io.

Examples - pedir, servir.
V. Verb (cont.)

b. Other orthographical changes.

(1) Verbs ending in cer and cir preceded by a vowel must insert a z before the c before an o or a.

\[\text{conocer} \rightarrow \text{conozco}\]

(2) Unstressed i becomes y between two vowels.

\[\text{leer} \rightarrow \text{leyendo}\]

(3) Verbs ending in uir change as do verbs of Class II, the only difference is that when Class II verbs change e to ie, uir verbs add y to the stem. When Class II verbs change e to i, uir verbs change i of the ending to i.

\[\text{incluir} \rightarrow \text{incluyendo}\]

(4) Verbs ending in gar change g to gu before e.

\[\text{pagar} \rightarrow \text{pague}\]

(5) Verbs ending in car change c to gu before e.

\[\text{buscar} \rightarrow \text{busque}\]

(6) Verbs ending inquir change qu to c before o or a.

\[\text{delinquir} \rightarrow \text{delinco}\]

(7) Verbs ending in ger and gir change g to j before o or a.

\[\text{escoger} \rightarrow \text{escojo}\]

(8) Verbs ending in cer and cir preceded by a consonant change c to z before o or a.

\[\text{vencer} \rightarrow \text{venzo}\]

(9) Verbs ending in zar change s to z before e.

\[\text{gozar} \rightarrow \text{goce}\]

(10) Verbs ending in guir drop u before o or a.

\[\text{distinguir} \rightarrow \text{distingo}\]

---

238 Except decir and hacer.

239 This change may occur in er and ir verbs in endings ie and iu.

240 Uir is also like uir verbs except in present indicative and subjunctive.

241 This is in order to retain the hard sound of g and x.

242 This is in order to retain the soft sound of g.

243 To preserve hard sound of g.
V. Verbs (cont.)

(11) Verbs ending in guar change u to ü before e. 244
    averiguar = averigüe

M. Impersonal verbs.
1. Most verbs may be used impersonally either
   as reflexive - conjugated with se, or con-
   jungated in third person singular.
   a. Verbs denoting natural phenomena are
      impersonal.
      ilueve
   b. Verbs denoting time are impersonal.
      Es tardé
   c. Haber - when not used as an auxiliary
      verb in the perfect tenses always has
      impersonal significance. Haber, with
      impersonal meaning, may be conjugated
      in all tenses but only in the third
      person singular. 245
      Hay - translates there is, there
      are.
   d. Es (third singular present tense of
      ser) may be combined with certain ad-
      jectives to form impersonal expressions.
      It may be used in all tenses but only
      in the third person singular form.
      es preciso, es bueno, etc.
   e. Haber + que - conjugated in all tenses
      but only in third person singular
      translates the English impersonal "to
      be necessary".
   f. Tener + que - conjugated in all tenses
      and all persons and numbers also trans­
      lates English "to be necessary" but is
      more personal in meaning.

O. Past participle.
1. As auxiliary in perfect tenses is invariable.
2. As adjective has full adjectival inflection.
3. In passive voice has full adjectival inflection.

244 To preserve sound of u.
245 Haber can only be used in third person as im­
   personal verb or as an auxiliary.
V. Verb (cont.)

P. Present participle.
   1. Is invariable.

Q. Formation of compound verbs.
   1. As in French, many verbs are formed from
      one verb by use of prefixes.
      prender - comprender - aprender
      tener - contener
   2. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives and
      have ecer ending.
      envejecer from viejo
      verdecer from verde
      florecer from flor

VI. Y and O.

A. Y (and) becomes ő before words beginning in ń
   or hi. 246

B. O (or) becomes ů before words beginning in o or
   ho. 246

VII. Personal a.

   A. A direct object denoting a person (noun or pro-
      noun) requires that a precede it except
      1. After verbs with idiomatic meanings when
         used with a.
         tener - to have; tener a - to hold
         querer - to wish; querer a - to love
      2. Before nouns preceded by a numeral.
      3. If there is an indirect object depending
         on same verb (indirect object takes prece-
         dence since all indirect objects are pre-
         ceded by a).
      4. If a would come between words ending and
         beginning with a.

Comparison and Comment

I. Article.

   The article is inflected in all languages except in

   246 For euphony.
In French and Spanish the article is inflected in number and gender. In German it is inflected in case as well. The neuter article in Spanish is invariable.

In French, Spanish and German articles often contract with prepositions (au, al, ins).

II. Adjective.

It is a peculiarity of the English language that adjectives are invariable except for the formation of the comparative and superlative degrees. In the other languages adjectives are inflected in gender and number (and in German, case). These languages also are inflected for the comparative and superlative degrees, although only in English and German do the adjectives really undergo change. In French and Spanish, the degrees are formed by use of modifying words. Pretty - prettier - prettiest, beau - plus beau - le plus beau, schön - schöner - der schönste, bonito - más bonito - más bonito.

All the languages may form absolute superlatives by using modifying words in conjunction with the positive form of the adjective. Tres bon, very good, sehr gut, muy bueno.

A peculiarity of the Spanish language is the use of inflectionalísimo suffix to form absolute superlatives. Bueno - buenísimo.

---

247 Indefinite article a in English becomes an before a word beginning with a vowel.
Possessive adjectives in English are inflected in person, number and gender and agree with the possessor. Possessive adjectives in French, German and Spanish are inflected in person, number and gender (and case in German), and agree in person only with the possessor, the gender and number (and case in German) depending upon the object possessed.

An interesting peculiarity of the German declension of adjectives is the fact that there are three declensions for any adjective, the declension to be used depending upon the word or lack of a word modifying the adjective (der gute Knabe, ein guter Knabe, guter Knabe).

The numerals are treated very similarly in French, German and Spanish in that one (un, ein, uno) are inflected, but the other cardinals are invariable. The ordinals are inflected as any adjective in these languages.

The apocopation of adjectives is a peculiarity of the Spanish language, although German adjectives ending in en, el, er, may drop the e before adding inflectional endings having an e.

III. Pronouns

All languages make inflectional changes in pronominal forms to denote gender, number and case, although case in-

248 However, this is not true apocopation but rather contraction in German.
flection is most clearly shown in German, which does not require the use of a preposition to show the genitive and dative cases as do the other three languages.  

Possessive and demonstrative pronouns have full inflection for gender and number in French, Spanish and German (and case in German). In English they are inflected only in number.

Relative pronouns have forms in all languages which are uninflected. In French, German and Spanish, however, there are other forms to denote gender and number (and in German, case). These forms are used when the antecedent is not plainly understood. In German uninflected relatives may not be used if there is an antecedent. The uninflected forms are used only when there is no known antecedent.

The Spanish relative pronoun *cuyo* has no true parallel in French. It corresponds to English *whose* and German *dessen*.

The contraction of German relative pronouns with prepositions is a peculiarity of that language and has few parallels in the other languages. However, it is comparable to the English *wherein*, *whereby*, etc.

It is interesting to note that French has two pronouns to translate English *you* (*tu* and *vous*, *tu* being singu-

---

249 Spanish also has personal *a* to denote accusative case. See personal *a*, page 161.

250 Unless the antecedent is a superlative, an indefinite pronoun or a complete idea.
lar familiar form, vous being plural familiar form and both forms of formal you.) German has three—du, ihr, singular and plural familiar, and Sie, singular and plural formal. Spanish has four, tu and vosotros, familiar forms, and usted and ustedes, formal.

IV. Nouns.

In French and Spanish there are four forms for most nouns (le voisin - la voisine - les voisins - les voisines; el vecino, la vecina, los vecinos, las vecinas). In German nouns are inflected according to case as well as to number and gender, hence a noun has more forms than in the other languages, (der Nachbar, des Nachbars, die Nachbarn, den Nachbarn251; die Nachbarin, die Nachbarinnen, den Nachbarinnenn251). Thus in English a noun has three forms, singular and plural and genitive singular. In French and Spanish a noun has four forms, masculine singular and plural and feminine singular and plural. In German a regular noun has seven different forms, masculine nominative and genitive singular, nominative and dative plural; feminine nominative singular and nominative and dative plural.

The formation of nouns in all languages is a subject

251 Nachbarn, since the plural already ends in n, does not add n in dative plural. However, any noun not already ending in n must add n in dative plural so the form is given here.
of interest not only because of the manner in which the formation is accomplished but also because of the variety and individuality which it lends to the language. In English the formation of feminine nouns may be accomplished in many ways—(1) by the addition of a suffix (actor - actress), (2) by the addition of a prefix (man - woman), (3) by adjective modifiers (male or female) and by innumerable other methods, some of which are directly borrowed from foreign languages. The many methods of forming feminine nouns from masculine nouns in Spanish include, (1) changing the vowel ending of the masculine form (el gato - la gata, el monje - la monja), (2) addition of a vowel (el duque - la duquesa). French nouns change their gender in much the same manner (le voisin - la voisine, le boulanger - la boulangerère, le veuf - la veuve). In English and French and Spanish, gender may often be denoted by an adjective modifier (the male hare, the female hare; le lièvre mâle, le lièvre femelle; la liebre macho, la liebre hembra). The German language does not have gender qualifying adjectives but may use Männchen, Weibchen in apposition (der Hase, ein Männchen; der Hase, ein Weibchen). German nouns are not so variable as to gender of meaning as are the other languages. The most important

252 The use of these adjectives does not change grammatical gender. Note that Spanish macho and hembra are invariable.
 instance found in German for forming feminine nouns from masculine is the addition of in to certain masculine forms (generally nouns denoting professions - Der Lehrer, Die Lehrerin). However, German nouns may be formed in many ways:

1. To a masculine word add schaft to form abstract words (der Freund - die Freundschaft).

2. Addition of heit and keitto adjectives to form nouns (frei - die Freiheit).

An interesting inflectional change occurs in German when adjectives are used as nouns. These adjectives are capitalized and are preceded by the article as any noun, but unlike true nouns, they keep their complete adjectival inflection and agree as any adjective with a noun understood (das Schöne, dem Schönem, etc.) This is a peculiarity of the German language.

Many interesting changes occur when nouns are formed from other parts of speech. As in Spanish - hazmereir - an imperative form of the verb hacer, the direct object pronoun me and the infinitive of the verb reir, literally translated means make me laugh, idiomatically translated means laughing-stock. So also with the Spanish compound noun los quehaceres, which is formed by joining a relative pronoun with

253 Schaft may be added to many parts of speech and to nouns of all genders (Landschaft, Eigenschaft, Barschaft).

254 Laughing-stock is a good example of a compound noun in English, formed from a noun and the present participle of the verb to laugh.
with the infinitive of hacer and which is literally translated, the what to do's, idiomatically means chores.

French and Spanish have direct parallels in the formation of compound nouns, by using the third person singular of the verb plus a noun. French - le portemanteau - valise - formed by joining the third person singular form of the verb porter and the noun manteau. (Spanish - el pasatiempo - formed by joining the third person singular form of the verb pasar and the noun Tiempo). English has a compound noun equivalent to this - passtime. French, German and Spanish and English all form compound nouns by means of joining an adjective with a noun. (French, le gentilhomme; German, die Jungfrau; Spanish, la enhorabuena; English, gentleman). All of the languages may form compound nouns by joining two nouns. (French, choufleur; German, Geburtstag; Spanish, la bocacalle; English, birthday).

Diminutive endings may be used in all languages, generally by suffixes, to denote smallness, dearness or to impart derogatory significance. (French, le lion - le lionceau; German, der Sohn - das Söhnchen; Spanish, el niño - el niñito; English, lamb - lambkin.)

---

255 German also forms nouns from verbs and nouns, but does not use the third person form (das Lesebuch).

256 It is interesting to note that in German, the addition of these diminutive suffixes changes the gender of the noun.
In the matter of number, only one new change is added to the various inflections which a noun may have, although the plural may be formed in many different ways in each language, depending upon such things as the length, gender, ending of the singular form. This is true for all languages, although in Spanish and English, the plurals of nouns are more regularly formed than in French and German. German probably offers the greatest difficulties with respect to the formation of the plural, since with all the various ways of forming the plural (four), many exceptions occur which make it almost obligatory that one learn the plural as well as the singular of each noun.

V. Verbs.
Perhaps the simplest way to show the extent of inflection in verbs of the various languages would be to make a comparison of the number of changes which a verb undergoes in the simple tenses, including both subjunctive and indicative moods, imperative mood, infinitives, past and present participles.

In French, of the five simple tenses of the three conjugations in indicative and subjunctive moods and the

---

257 Cf. German addition of n to nouns in dative plural.
258 It is rather difficult to compute these changes in English since the subjunctive is practically obsolete.
imperative, there are forty-six different verbal changes,
four infinitive forms, three different forms for the past
participle, and two different forms for the present participle. 259

In German of the two simple tenses 260 of the two con-
jugations in the subjunctive and indicative moods and the
imperative, there are twenty-three different verbal changes.
There are, one infinitive, two forms for the past participle
and one form for the present participle.

In Spanish of the five simple tenses of the three
conjugations in the indicative and subjunctive moods and the
imperative, there are forty-nine different verbal forms,
three forms for the infinitive, two forms for the past parti-
ciple and two forms for the present participle.

In English the use of the subjunctive mood is so ver-
ied and yet so limited that a true comparison on this basis
is difficult to form. However, a practicable comparison may
be made from the present tense indicative of all languages.
French has for the present indicative of the first conjuga-
tion verbs, five verbal changes, German has four, Spanish
has six, and English has two.

259 This computation does not include irregular verbs
of any of the languages.

260 German future and conditional tenses are formed
with an auxiliary and there is only one simple past tense in
German.
The infinitive has only one form in English and German. In French and Spanish there are three forms for the infinitive. The present participle in English and German has one form, in French and Spanish, two forms. The past participle in English and German,\textsuperscript{261} and Spanish has two forms, in French, three.

There are three conjugations for verbs in French and Spanish, the conjugation to which a verb belongs depending upon the infinitive ending, and hence easy for correct placement. In German and English there are two conjugations, but it is impossible to determine to which conjugation a verb belongs, since there is only one infinitive form for all verbs.

Many parallels exist between German and English verbs. Both have two conjugations, weak and strong. The weak conjugation of both languages forms the simple past tense by means of endings (\textit{ed} in English, \textit{t} plus endings in German), and form regular past participles (\textit{ed} in English, \textit{ge} prefix and \textit{t} suffix in German). The strong conjugations of both languages undergo vowel changes in the past tense and may have vowel change in present participle.\textsuperscript{262} Irregular weak verbs occur in both languages which are comparable (bring - brought -

\textsuperscript{261}English and German past participles of strong verbs may have vowel changes; these are not included in this comparison.

\textsuperscript{262}German strong verbs may also undergo a vowel change in present tense.
brought, English; bringen - brachte - gebracht, German).

tenses by means of an auxiliary and the infinitive (will go
- warden geben). There is only one simple past tense in
each language, and only one pluperfect tense.

There are many similarities existing between French
and Spanish verbs in addition to those already mentioned.
Each language has two simple past tenses. Each has more than
one pluperfect tense. Each forms its future and condi-
tional tense by adding endings to the complete infinitive
form, the endings being alike in each language for each of
its three conjugations. It is interesting to note that in
both languages, the endings of the imperfect tense, (respec-
tively) are the same endings each uses in forming the condi-
tional tense, differing only from each other because of the
verbal stem to which the endings are added. French adds ais,
ais, ait, ions, iez, aient, to the infinitive stem to form
the imperfect tense, and adds them to the complete infinitive
to form the conditional tense. Spanish adds ía, ías,
ías, íamos, íais, ían to stem of infinitive to form imperfect
tense and adds them to the complete infinitive to form the
conditional tense.

Spanish and English are the only two languages which

263 Spanish has two, French, three.
have the progressive tenses. They are formed in the same manner in both languages (to be, plus present participle in English, and estar plus present participle in Spanish).

English is unique in having an emphatic tense (do plus infinitive).

There is a parallel existing between French and German since they use two auxiliaries in forming the perfect tenses (avoir and être in French, and haben and sein in German). The use of each corresponds rather closely in both languages. Both use their auxiliary translating to have (haben - avoir) to form the perfect tenses of transitive verbs and intransitive verbs not denoting motion or change of condition (J'ai pris, Er hat genommen). Both use the auxiliary translating to be (être - sein) with intransitive verbs denoting motion or change of condition (je suis allé - Ich bin gegangen). However, one major difference exists - French uses être to conjugate the perfect tenses of reflexive verbs, German uses haben. (je me suis réjoui; ich habe mich unterhalten).

All of the languages form their perfect tenses in like manner, by using the past participle of the verb in question plus the conjugated form of the auxiliary verb.

There are three persons to be used in the conjugation.

---

264 In German dialects an emphatic construction similar to the English is still in common usage.
of an English verb, four in the verbs of the other languages, since each has a familiar and a formal second person form (tu - usted in Spanish, tu - vous in French, du - Sie in German). Spanish actually has an extra person, since there are a singular and plural form for usted, as well as a singular and plural form for tu. In French vous serves as a plural for tu as well as for the singular and plural form of the formal pronoun. In German du has its own plural, but Sie stands for both singular and plural formal forms.

There are some parallels existing between French and Spanish orthographical changing verbs. In French, e is added after a soft g before a or o to preserve the soft sound of the g as it was in the infinitive. In Spanish, soft g changes to j before a or o to preserve the soft sound of the g as it was in the infinitive.

In most cases the orthographical changes in these two languages occur for the same purpose, that of keeping the pronunciation of the consonants and vowels of the verb throughout the conjugation as they were in the original infinitive form.

French inflects the past participle in verbal forms more than do the other languages. In Spanish the past participle is inflected only when used in true passive voice. In

265 Note the similarity of you, tu, tu, du.
English and German the past participle used as a verbal form is never inflected. In French past participles of verbs conjugated with être are always inflected to agree in number and gender with the subject. Past participles of verbs conjugated with avoir to form the perfect tenses are inflected only if they have a preceding direct object, in which case they are inflected to agree in number and gender with that direct object.

The Spanish language is unique in that its auxiliary haber cannot be used as an independent verb, except in impersonal expressions, when it appears only in the third person singular form.

The impersonal verbs of all languages correspond rather closely. All such verbs are conjugated only in the third person. In French and Spanish they are always singular. In English and German they may be conjugated in the plural form as well. (French - il y a; German, Es gibt; Spanish, hay; English, there is (are).)

The German language is the only language which makes a distinction in the usage of these impersonal expressions. Es gibt is used if there is no reference to a definite object, time or place. If such reference is given, es ist or es sind is used.

Past participles of reflexive verbs agree with a preceding direct object if there is one, otherwise with the subject. (Les robes qu'elle s'est achetées).
Expressions of time, natural phenomena, are treated in like manner by all languages.

267 German also has es sind form (note singular pronoun). When Es gibt is used as impersonal expression, it can only be conjugated in the singular form.
CHAPTER V

VERBS

English

For conjugation, principal parts, etc., see Inflection of the English Verb.

I. Use of the Tenses

A. Indicative

1. Present Tenses
   a. To denote action or state in present time. (I write.)
   b. Present progressive tense denotes present time, emphasizing the fact that the action or state is in progress at the present time. (I am writing.)
   c. Emphatic present denotes present time. Used merely for emphasis. (I do write.)
   d. Used to denote future time in "if" clauses. (If I go, I shall see her.)
   e. To denote habitual action. (I write every day.)

2. Past Tense
   a. To denote past action or state. (I wrote.)
   b. Past progressive tense denotes an act of progress some time in the past. (I was writing.)
   c. Emphatic past denotes an act or state in the past. Used for emphasis. (I did write.)
   d. To denote habitual action. (I wrote every day.)

3. Future Tense
   a. To denote an act or state that will take place in the future. (I shall write.)
   b. To replace the imperative. (You will go.)

---

The English past progressive tense is comparable to the imperfect tenses in Spanish, French, and German.
I. Use of the Tenses (cont.)

c. Future progressive tense to denote an act that will be taking place in the future. (I shall be writing.)
d. To denote probability. (That will be John.)

4. Conditional Tense
a. In result clause of conditional sentences contrary to fact. (If I were you, I should do it.)
b. Conditional progressive tense denotes an act that would be taking place. (He would be going.)

5. Present Perfect
a. Denotes an act in past time now completed. (I have written.)
b. To denote an act begun in the past, the action of which is carried into the present. (I have lived here two years.)
c. Present perfect progressive denotes an act begun in the past, the action of which is carried into the present. (I have been writing for two hours.)

6. Pluperfect
a. Denotes an act or state in the past that occurred prior to another past act. (I had written the letter when I saw him.)
b. Pluperfect progressive denotes an act or state that had been taking place before and was still in progress with another past act. (I had been walking for two hours when I met her.)

7. Future Perfect
a. Denotes an act or state that will have taken place. (I shall have lived here two years next March.)
b. Future perfect progressive denotes an act or state that will have been taking place. (I shall have been living here two years next March.)

^Uncommon.

3All the other languages use present tense for this.
I. Use of the Tenses (cont.)

c. To denote probability in past time.
   (That will have been John.)

8. Conditional Perfect
   a. To denote an act that would have taken
   place (generally denotes contrary to
   fact). (I should have gone, if I had
   been able.)

B. Subjunctive
   l. May be used to denote wish, hope, commands,
      supposition, condition, contrary to fact
      statements in any tense.

II. Use of Moods

A. Indicative
   l. To express that which is fact or actual.
      (He is here.)
   2. To express fact. (He is here.)
   3. To replace the subjunctive mood in modern
      English. (If he came—old form of subjunc-
      tive now replaced by if he comes, indicative.)

B. Subjunctive
   l. Uses Of
      a. In Independent Clauses
         (1) To denote wish or hope. (Long
         live the king!)
         (2) To express commands. (So be it.)
      b. In Dependent Clauses
         (1) Noun clauses.
            (a) After verbs of desire, wish.
               (I wish he were here.)
            (b) After verbs of volition.
               (I insist that he move.)
         (2) Contrary to fact statements. (If
         he were here, he would do it.)

   2. Substitutes for Subjunctive
      a. The indicative mood has replaced the
         subjunctive in practically all cases.
      b. Phrases with may and might. (Long may
         he live! instead of long live he!)
II. Use of Moods (cont.)

3. Imperative Mood
   a. Uses
      (1) To express commands. (Go!) (Col)
      (2) In exclamation, go on!
   b. Substitutes For
      (1) Use of let as auxiliary. (Let him go.)
      (2) Use of future indicative tense. (You will go.)

III. Voice

A. Active
   1. Uses
      a. To denote that the subject does the action.
      b. To stress the action.

B. Passive
   1. Uses
      a. To denote that the action of the verb is received by the subject, thus making of the subject the subject-object. (He was hit.)
      b. To stress the subject and not the verb. (to stress the receiving of the action and not the action itself, the condition rather than action)
   2. Substitutes For
      a. Impersonal expressions. (One says for it is said.)

C. Reflexive Verbs
   1. To denote that the subject acts upon itself, doing as well as receiving the action. (He hit himself.)

D. Reciprocal Verbs
   1. To denote that a plural subject acts upon itself, each part of the subject acting upon the other. (They love each other.)

IV. Auxiliary Verbs

A. Of Perfect Tenses (to have)
IV. Auxiliary Verbs (cont.)

1. To have, as well as being used in all the perfect tenses, may also be used as an independent verb denoting (1) possession or ownership and (2) obligation. (I have a book. I have to go.)

B. Of Future and Conditional Tenses
1. Will and would are used only as auxiliary verbs, never independently.  

C. Of Progressive Tenses (to be)
1. To be may also be used independently denoting state or position. (I am here.)

D. Of Emphatic Tenses (do)
1. To do may also be used independently. (He does the work.)

E. Quasi-Auxiliaries  
- can - could denotes ability  
- shall - should denotes obligation  
- will - would denotes wish  
- may - might denotes possibility, replace subjunctive  
- let - indirect commands, let something be done

F. Of Passive Voice
1. To be. (He was hit.)

V. Infinitive

A. Uses Of
1. As noun. (To sing is to be happy.)  
2. As dependent complements of verbs. (I want to go.)

VI. Past Participle

A. Uses Of
1. To form perfect tenses of verbs.  
2. As adjective. (The hidden treasure.)

5Shall and should for first person.
6Comparable to German model auxiliaries and the quasi-auxiliaries of French and Spanish.
VII. Present Participle

A. Uses

1. To form progressive tenses.
2. As noun. (Seeing is believing.)
3. In participial adjective and adverbial phrase. (I met him walking down the street.)
4. As adjective. (His trembling hands.)

French

For conjugation, principal parts, etc., see Inflection of French Verb.

I. Use of Tenses

A. Indicative Tenses

1. Present Tense
   a. To denote an act or state going on in present time. (Il parle - he speaks, is speaking, does speak.)
   b. To denote past activity continuing into present time. (Je suis ici depuis longtemps - I have been here a long time.)
   c. After si in a conditional clause to denote future time. (Si je vais demain - if I go tomorrow.)
   d. In narration to replace the past tense, called historical present.
   e. Present of aller plus infinitive to express future time. (Je vais l'acheter - I am going to buy it.)

---

7This occurs with such expressions as depuis, il y a... que, voici...que, and voilà... que. (This use of present is comparable to Spanish and German but English must use present perfect tense.
8After si meaning whether, the regular tenses are used. This use of present tense is also found in English, Spanish, and German.
9When this tense is used other tenses used in conjunction must correspond; also in other languages.
10Like English going to and Spanish ir a. German merely uses present tense.
I. Use of Tenses (cont.)

f. To replace the future to express near future time. (Je reviens demain - I shall return tomorrow.)

2. Imperfect Tense

a. To denote an action or state that existed in past time, the activity of which was going on concurrently with another past act or state. (Pendant qu'il étudiait, vous jouiez - while he was studying you were playing.)

b. To denote a series of past acts or events - pictorial imperfect. (Ordinarily would use past absolute.)

c. Occasionally to replace the conditional perfect in the conclusion clause of a past contrary to fact statement or after sans. (Si j'avais dit un mot, or si je disais un mot - if I had said a word.) (Sans lui, je m'échappais - but for him, I should have escaped.)

d. To denote habitual action in past time. (J'étudiais le français trois heures par jour - I used to study French three hours a day.)

e. To denote a past activity carried on for some time in the past. (Il y avait un mois que j'étais là. - I had been there a month.)

---

11 Spanish and German have this use of the present tense.
12 As in German and Spanish, the French imperfect tense stresses the fact that the termination of the act or state described does not terminate within the range of knowledge of the speaker. The imperfect tense cannot be used if it is definitely stated or indicated that the activity did terminate.
13 This use of the imperfect is not obligatory, the conditional perfect is just as good. This use of the imperfect tense is peculiar to the French language.
14 Translated in English by used to, was accustomed to, past progressive tense, or would.
15 Like Spanish and German.
I. Use of Tenses (cont.)

f. In condition clause of contracy to fact statements when referring to present time. (Si j'avais le temps, j'irais - if I had time, I should go.)

g. To denote past action interrupted by another past act. (J'étudiais quand il est entré - I was studying when he entered.)

3. Past Absolute

a. To denote an action or state existing completely in past time, and to stress fact that the duration of action was very short. (La bomba éclata - the bomb exploded.)

b. Used to narrate past events, called historical narrative. (Aussitôt qu'il m'aperçut, il vint à moi. As soon as he saw me, he came to me.)

c. To denote that an act in the past was completed. (Il dut aller - he had to go, whereas il devait aller means it was his duty to go, it does not imply that he went. Il dut aller implies that he did go.)

d. To interrupt the action of an act stated in imperfect tense. (Je me taisais quand tout a coup il parla - I was silent when suddenly he spoke, broke the silence.)

---

16 As in English. (This may be replaced by subjunctive in French.

17 A tense peculiar to French. In contrast to imperfect, the past absolute implies that the act or state has terminated. The past absolute is used mainly in narrations.

18 Unless it is indicated that several actions in the past were contemporaneous, it is inferred that the events followed one after the other.

19 No matter how long it took to complete the act, if it definitely at some time was completed, the past absolute tense is used.
I. Use of Tenses (cont.)

- To sum up a number of past events previously mentioned. (Tous per- 
dirent la vie - all lost their lives.)
- To definitely limit an act as occurring in the past. (La guerre dura 
sept ans - the war lasted seven years.)

4. Future Tense
   a. To denote an act or state that will take place in the future. (Vous irez 
demain - you will go tomorrow.)
   b. In subordinate clauses with the indicative to denote future time. (Quand 
vous viendra, je partirai - when you come, I shall go.)
   c. To resemble meanings signified by devoir, vouloir, pouvoir plus infinitive. (J'avouerai or je dois avouer - I must confess.)
   d. To denote imperative significance. (Tu ne tueras pas - thou shalt not 
kill.)
   e. To denote probability in present time. (Sera Jean - it is probably John.)
   f. Not used following si unless si means whether. (This like Spanish but un-
like English.)

5. Conditional Tense
   a. To denote an event or state which, viewed from a past point, still belonged 
to the future, but which, regarded from the actual present time, lay in the past. 
(Je savais qu'il parlerait - I knew he would speak.)

---

20 May also be denoted by aller plus infinitive (like English going to, Spanish ir a.)
21 English uses present tense here.
22 As in other languages.
23 This exists in Spanish and German. English has this usage but it is not common.
24 The conditional tense in French is often replaced by the imperfect tense of aller plus the infinitive. (English and Spanish also have this construction.) It is comparable to the use of aller in present time plus infinitive to denote a future act.
I. Use of Tenses (cont.)

b. To express the result of a condition stated in the imperfect tense. (S'il travaillait, il réussirait - if he worked, he would succeed.)

c. To soften a request. (Voudriez-vous me le dire? - Would you please tell it to me?)

d. To express uncertainty or probability in exclamations or questions. (Cela serait il vrai? - Can that be true?)

e. To denote modest assertions. (Je voudrais que - I should like.)

f. To present an action as the condition of another action. (Dans le cas où il parlerait, elle m'en avertirait. - In case he should speak, she would inform me of it.)

g. In contrary to fact sentences in present time in the conclusion clause. (Si j'avais le temps, j'irais - if I had time, I should go.)

6. Present Perfect (Past Indefinite)

a. To denote a past action or state complete at the present time. (J'ai fini - I have finished.)

b. To denote English past tense. (J'y suis allé cette nuit - I went there last night.)

c. To translate verbs used in past absolute tense when conversational style is desired.

7. Pluperfect (Imperfect of Auxiliary and Past Participle)

---

25 As in other languages.
26 As in English.
27 The present perfect tense in French is the most often used to translate the English simple past tense, or the Spanish pretérito or the German present perfect.
28 French has three past perfect tenses: (1) pluperfect, formed by imperfect tense of auxiliary and past participle; (2) past anterior, formed by past absolute tense of auxiliary and past participle; (3) compound past anterior, formed by present perfect tense of auxiliary and past participle. All the other languages have two past perfect tenses except English which has only one.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
1. Use of Tenses (cont.)

a. To denote a past action or state already completed at a point in the past. (Il était parti quand je suis arrivé - he had left when I arrived.)

b. After such adverbial conjunctions as à peine...que, (scarcely...when), ne...pas plus tôt...que (no sooner...than). (À peine avait-il parlé, que je lui répondis.)

c. After such adverbial conjunctions as aussitôt que (as soon as) lorsque (when) etc. (Aussitôt qu'il avait fini son travail, ils arrivèrent. As soon as he had finished his work, they arrived.)

d. When the time used in completing the act is stated. (Il avait fini son travail en deux heures.)

e. In conditional clause of contrary to fact statements referring to past time. (Si je l'avais vu, je l'aurais dit - if I had seen it, I should have said so.)

8. Past Anterior (Past Absolute of Auxiliary and Past Participle)

a. To denote English pluperfect tense in literary and historical narration.

b. After aussitôt que, sitôt que (as soon as); lorsque (when) etc., if no repeated action is denoted. (Aussitôt qu'il eut fini, ils arrivèrent - as soon as he had finished, they arrived.)

c. After a peine...que (scarcely...when) ne...pas, plus tot...que (no sooner...than) etc., when no repeated action is implied. (À peine eut-il fini, qu'ils arrivèrent - he had scarcely finished when they arrived.)

---

29 The past anterior may also be used in these cases if no repeated action is implied. The pluperfect implies repeated action.

30 See footnote 28 page 186

31 When repeated action is implied the pluperfect tense is used. The past anterior tense corresponds in this sense to the Spanish Pretérito Perfecto.
I. Use of Tenses (cont.)

d. When the time required for the completion of the act is indicated.
(II eut fini en deux heures.)

9. Compound Past Anterior (Present Perfect of Auxiliary and Past Participle)
   a. Restricted almost entirely to conversational French to take the place of the past anterior tense.

10. Future Perfect Tense
    a. To denote that an activity will be completed at some time in the future.
       (Dans dix minutes il aura fini - he will have finished in ten minutes.)
    b. To denote future perfect time in subordinate clauses where English uses present perfect time.
       (Quand il aura dormi, il ira mieux - when he has slept, he will feel better.)
    c. To denote a supposition in past time.
       (Il sera parti - he must have left.)

11. Conditional Perfect
    a. Is related to the conditional tense in exactly the same manner as in the future perfect tense related to the future.
    b. Used in conclusion clause of contrary to fact statement in past time.
       (Si j'avais eu le livre, je l'aurais lu - if I had had the book, I should have read it.)

B. Subjunctive

1. Present Tense
   a. To denote what is going on.
   b. To denote what is still to come in the future.

31 When repeated action is implied the pluperfect tense is used. The past anterior tense corresponds in this sense to the Spanish Pretérito Perfecto.
32 See footnote 28, page 186.
33 Like Spanish and German.
34 There are only four subjunctive tenses in French - present, imperfect, present perfect, and pluperfect.
35 The time of the subjunctive verb is largely dependent on the time of the principal verb. This factor will be treated under the heading Sequence of Tense, page 194.
I. Use of the Tenses (cont.)

2. Imperfect
   a. To denote what was going on.
   b. To denote what was still to come.
   c. To denote a wish which is unrealized.

3. Present Perfect
   a. To denote that which is complete.

4. Pluperfect
   a. To denote that which was complete at some time in the past.

II. Uses of Moods

A. Indicative

1. To represent a reality.
2. To assume that a statement is true.
3. To denote truth.
4. To represent that which is believed to be true.

B. Subjunctive

1. Uses of
   a. To denote that that which is stated is not necessarily intended as being a fact.
   b. To express hope, wish.
   c. The mood of doubt.
   d. Subjunctive in independent clauses.
      (1) To denote a wish. (Vive le roi!)
      (2) To express an order. (Ainsi soit-il!)
      (3) In expressions such as qui vive? (Who goes there?)
      (4) Use of French soit...soit to translate English whether...or.
          (Soit qu'il parle, soit qu'il se taise - whether he talks or is silent.)

36 The indicative mood occurs in statements, declarations, exclamations, questions, in independent and dependent clauses.
37 The subjunctive mood occurs chiefly in dependent clauses but may also be used in independent clauses.
38 English also has a more literal translation of this (Be he - or be he -l) In the French usage the other verbs are in the indicative.
II. Uses of Moods (cont.)

(5) To denote a conditional, concessive or temporal meaning. (Vienne encore il, et - if he comes again.)

e. Subjunctive in dependent clauses.

(1) Noun Clauses

(a) After verbs of volition. (Requirement, command, request, permission, intention.)

(II exige qu'ils arrivent a l'heure - he requires them to come on time.)

(b) After verbs of emotion, desire, approval, pleasure, wonder, fear, sorrow, etc.

(Je suis content que vous soyez venu.)

(c) After verbs of denial, despair, doubt. (Je doute qu'il vienne.) and 41

(d) After verbs of knowing if the knowledge is denied or questioned. (Il ne croit pas qu'elle soit malade; but il croit qu'elle est malade.)

39 Must always be introduced by que. (In English relative pronouns may be omitted but in French, Spanish, and German their inclusion is necessary.)

40 This corresponds to the Spanish use of subjunctive mood.

41 After an affirmative verb of fearing (avoir peur, etc.) he is generally used preceding the subjunctive verb. (This is not used if the verb of fearing is in the negative. (Je crains qu'il ne vienne, but Je ne crains qu'il vienne.) Verbs of doubting used negatively take pleonastic ne but in affirmative do not. (Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne. Je doute pas qu'il vienne.)

42 If the knowledge is not questioned, the indicative follows such verbs.
II. Use of Moods (cont.)

(a) In most subject clauses not implying certainty, i.e., after indefinite expressions such as il semble que, il est possible qu'il soit malade.)

(f) In clauses which precede the main verb, even though that clause, if followed the verb, would be indicative. (Qu'il soit venu est evident. - Il est evident qu'il est venu.)

(2) Adjective Clauses

(a) In clauses denoting characteristic, describing a noun in the independent clause which is the object of a verb of volition, wishing or striving, or a verb in the imperative mood. This may also follow verbs of negative assertion, question and affirmative conditions. (Je cherche un homme qui ne les craigne.) (Je ne connais personne qui ne les craigne.)

---

43 Cf. il est evident que, il est certain que, which take indicative. Peut être que already implies probability so takes indicative.

44 Spanish has this usage of subjunctive.

45 A usage of the subjunctive peculiar to the French language.

46 In French (as in Spanish and German) any dependent clause must be introduced by a conjunction. (In English the conjunction may be omitted.)

47 After negative assertions, questions, and affirmative conditions, the subjunctive in the dependent clause is negated by ne alone (omitting pas).

48 The noun which such a clause modifies is indefinite. (This corresponds to the Spanish use of subjunctive in adjective clauses.)
II. Use of Moods (cont.)

(b) After a superlative in the antecedent. (C'est l'homme le plus intelligent que je connaisse.)

(c) After the adjectives premier, dernier, seul, unique in the antecedent. (C'est le dernier service que je puisse vous rendre.)

(d) With clauses introduced by an indefinite relative pronoun such as qui que, quoi que, où que, si que, où que, si que ce soit (anything at all). (Qui que vous soyez, n'avancez pas. Quoi qu'il arrive, je ferai mon devoir.)

(3) Adverb Clauses

(a) In clauses of purpose (after pour que, afin que, etc.)
(J'écris ceci afin que vous sachiez la vérité.)

The indicative may also be used after dernier, etc.
C'est le dernier service que je puisse vous rendre. (It is the last service of such a kind that I can render you.)
C'est le dernier service que je pourrai vous rendre. (It is the last service I can render you, but I can render it.)

50 Whoever meaning all those who is translated in French by (tous) ceux qui or celui qui or quiconque plus the indicative mood.

51 Si que may be replaced by tout... que in which case the verb is indicative.

52 Quelque is inflected as follows: quel que, quels que, quelle que, quelles que.

53 In such clauses the subjunctive is used when it is understood that something tends to happen. If it is understood something actually did happen, the indicative is used. (J'ai agi de sorte qu'elle n'a pas droit de se plaindre.)
II. Use of Moods (cont.)

(b) In clauses of conditions which express an assumption which, if it is true, causes the conclusion to be true (after such conjunctions as pouvre que, a moins que, ne supposé que, a condition que, en supposant que, en cas que, etc. (Je partirai à moins qu'il ne pleuve.))

(c) In clauses of concession (after quoique, bien que, etc.) (Bien qu'il soit riche, il n'est pas heureux.)

(d) In clauses of time if the verb in the main clause precedes the verb in dependent clause in point of time. (after avant que, jusqu'à ce que, etc.) (J'irai avant qu'il parte.)

(e) In clauses of cause if the reality of the assertion is denied by a negation (after ce n'est pas que, etc.) (Ce n'est pas que je tienne à y aller, mais j'irai quand même.)

54 A condition que more often followed by indicative. (J'irai à condition que vous vendriez (or veniez) avec moi.)

55 If such clauses are introduced by si the verb following is indicative, unless the si introduces two conditions in which case the second condition is preceded by que and its following verb will be subjunctive. (Si vous avez peur et qu'il l'apprenne, vous êtes perdu (avez is indicative but apprenne is subjunctive.)

56 In all other cases, if verbs are contemporaneous in time or if the main verb follows the dependent verb in point of time, the indicative is used.

57 In all other causal clauses the indicative is used.
II. Use of Moods (cont.)

(f) In clauses of manner if the introductory phrase implies a denial of the reality of the assertion. (after sans que, etc.) (Il partit sans que je le susse.)

2. Substitutes for the Subjunctive
   a. Use of infinitive phrase instead of adverbial clause containing subjunctive. (Il l'a fait pour vous plaire instead of Il l'a fait afin qu'il vous plaise.)
   b. Infinitive in place of noun clause.
      (1) After verbs of volition when the subject, direct object or indirect object of the main clause is the subject of the noun clause. (Je veux dormir instead of je veux que je dorme.)
      (2) After verbs of emotion when the subject of the independent clause is also the subject of the noun clause. (Je desire vous parler.)
      (3) After verbs of denial and doubted knowledge if the subject of the independent clause is the subject of the noun clause. (Je désespère de réussir.)

3. Sequence of Tense for Subjunctive
   a. If main verb is in present or future tense, the dependent subjunctive verb is either present or present perfect.
   b. If main verb is in past tense, the dependent subjunctive is in imperfect or pluperfect tense.
   c. The present subjunctive is used to express future time in subjunctive mood.
   d. A present tense in the indicative may be followed by a dependent subjunctive verb in the present perfect tense.

58 If no denial is implied clauses of manner are in the indicative.
59 If there is a change of subject, however, the subjunctive must be used (thus one can only say Je veux qu'elle dorme).
II. Use of Moods (cont.)

C. Imperative Mood
1. Formation - see page 94.
2. Uses
   a. To give commands. (Faites cela maintenant.)
   b. To make suggestions. (Allons.)
   c. Imperative words used in exclamation. (Tiens!)
3. Substitutes for:
   a. Future tense to denote mild imperative. (Tu ne tueras pas.)
   b. Use of infinitive. (Traduire en français.)

III. Voice

A. Active Voice
1. To denote that the subject does the acting.
2. Stresses the verb or the action.

B. Passive Voice60
1. Formation - see page 94.
2. Uses
   a. To denote that the action of the verb was received by the subject, thus making the subject the subject object.
   b. To stress the subject and not the verb, to stress the receiving of the action and not the action.
3. Substitutes for Passive Voice
   a. Use of indefinite pronoun. (On dit cela.)
   b. Use of reflexive construction. (Le beurre se vend ici.)
   c. Use of faire and laisser plus infinitive. (Le ferez-vous vendre?)
   d. Use of à plus infinitive. (Une faute à éviter.)
   e. Use of infinitive construction with à. (Il n'y a rien à faire.)

---

60 The agent of a passive verb in French is accompanied by par or de. (Translates English by. Par is used (1) with verbs denoting physical activity, (Elle a été frappée par lui.), and (2) when verb refers to a specific or single occurrence. (Il fut accompagné par Jean. De is used (1) with verbs denoting mental activity (Il est respecté de tout le monde.) and (2) when verb refers to habitual action. (Le roi était suivi de sa suite.)
III. Voice (cont.)

C. Reflexive Voice
1. For formation - see page 95.
2. Uses
   a. To denote that the subject reacts upon itself, both doing and receiving the action.
   b. As substitute for passive voice.
   c. As substitute for reciprocal verbs.

D. Reciprocal
1. Formation - see page 95.
2. Uses
   a. To denote that a plural subject reacts upon itself, i.e., each part reacts upon the other. (Ils s’aiment.)

IV. Auxiliary Verbs

A. Perfect Tense Auxiliaries

1. Avoir - Uses Of
   a. To form perfect tenses of transitive verbs.
   b. To form perfect tenses of some intransitive verbs not denoting motion or change of condition.
   c. Translates English to have as an independent verb.

2. Être - Uses Of
   a. With intransitive verbs of motion or change of condition in perfect tenses.
   b. With all reflexive verbs in perfect tenses.
   c. As auxiliary in passive voice.
   d. As individual verb to translate English to be.

B. Quasi-Auxiliary Verbs (Infinitive Auxiliaries)

1. Devoir, falloir, pouvoir, vouloir, faire, laisser.

---

61 In French as in German, there are two auxiliaries for the perfect tenses. English and Spanish have but one.
62 For agreement of past participles, see Agreement, French Participle.
63 Require no preposition before the infinitive.
IV. Auxiliary Verbs (cont.)

a. Devoir implies duty, obligation, necessity, propriety, intention, etc. (Je dois y aller.)

b. Falloir implies necessity. (Il faudra y aller.)

c. Pouvoir implies ability, permission. (Il ne pouvait pas le faire.)

d. Vouloir implies desire, wish. (Je ne veux pas le savoir.)

e. Faire and laisser denote having something done. (Il fait écrire la lettre.)

C. Auxiliary of Passive Voice

1. Être

a. Être plus past participle which agrees in number and gender with the subject.

V. Infinitive

A. Uses Of

1. To replace the subjunctive in dependent clauses if the subject is the same in both clauses. (Je désire vous parler.)

2. To replace the subjunctive in dependent clauses after verbs of permission. (Il vous permet de chanter.)

3. To replace the English present participle after entendre, sentir, voir. (J'entends chanter l'enfant.)

4. After all prepositions except en. (Il est parti sans parler.)

5. As substantive. (Voir c'est croire.)

6. As object of a verb. (Il sait parler français.)

7. To denote imperative force. (Traduire en français.)

---

64 Falloir is an impersonal verb denoting necessity, devoir is a personal verb. (They are comparable to Spanish haber que and tener que, respectively.)

65 Comparable to German lassen plus infinitive, Spanish hacer plus infinitive. English here uses past participle.

66 En is followed by the present participle.

67 After après, the perfect infinitive is used. (Après avoir parlé.)
V. Infinitive (cont.)

8. As noun in apposition. (Le voilà; son devoir; protéger ses intérêts.)

   a. To denote purpose, fitness, tendency, etc. (Une salle à manger.)
   b. To denote passive force. (Il n'y a rien à faire.)

10. Infinitive with de.
    a. With impersonal verbs. (Il est facile de faire cela.)
    b. Following adjectives of emotion. (Il est content d'y rester.)

11. Infinitive without preposition after such verbs as aller, croire, désirer, faire, laisser, pouvoir, savoir, venir, falloir, etc. (Je vais partir.)

12. Infinitive with pour to translate English in order to. (Il faut manger pour vivre.)

13. Infinitive with faire to translate English have made, cause to be, etc. (Il fait construire une maison.)

14. After verbs of motion to denote purpose. (Il viendra me parler.)

15. After adjectives. (Il est le dernier à arriver.)

16. After verbs of perception. (J'ai vu bâtir cette maison.)

VI. Past Participle

A. Uses Of
1. To form all the perfect tenses.
2. To form passive voice with être.
3. As an adjective.
4. As nouns. (Un reçu.)
5. As prepositions. (attendu)
6. As conjunctions. (attendu que)

68 Corresponds to German use of zu plus infinitive for passive voice substitute.
69 Comparable to Spanish (hacer plus infinitive) and German (lassen plus infinitive).
70 As in Spanish.
VII. Present Participle

A. Uses of
1. After verbs of perception to denote action.  
   (Je les ai vus courant.)
2. As an adjective.  (Des enfants obéissants.)
3. With en to denote action.  (En lisant il s'endort.)

German

For conjugation, principal parts, etc., see Inflection.

German Verb.

I. Tenses - Uses Of

A. Indicative Tenses
1. Present Tense
   a. To denote an action or state going on in present time.  (Er spricht - he speaks, is speaking, does speak.)
   b. To denote a near future act.  (Ich bin gleich zurück.)
   c. In vivid narration to denote past time.  (Historical narration.)
   d. To denote activity begun in the past continuing into present time.  (Er ist seit drei Tagen hier.)
   e. After wenn to denote future time.  (Wenn er kommt...)
2. Past Tense (Imperfect)
   a. To narrate a series of past events.  (Er ging in die Stadt, ass in einem Café, traf fünf Freunde und kam spät zurück.)

71 May also use infinitive.
72 All other prepositions require the infinitive.
73 French and Spanish have this use of present tense.
74 English uses present perfect here.
75 French uses present time here also but French uses future tense.
75A A tense very similar to the imperfect tense of Spanish and French.
76 French also uses imperfect here but Spanish use the pretente.
I. Tenses - Uses of (cont.)

b. To relate habitual or repeated action in past time. (Er ging häufig in die Stadt.)

c. To denote an activity or state going on in past time, the activity of which was going on contemporaneously with some other past act or state or is interrupted by it. (Ich arbeitete, als es geschah.)

d. To describe states of being in past time. (Sie war sehr schön.)

e. To replace the present perfect in compound and complex sentences. (Als er kam, sah er den Mann, instead of Als er gekommen ist, hat er den Mann gesehen.)

f. To express an action begun in past continuing up to a more recent past time. (Er wohnnte schon drei Jahre da.)

3. Future Tense

a. To denote an act or state in future tense. (Er wird morgen kommen.)

b. To denote probability in present time. (Er wird wohl zu Hause sein.)

c. As mild imperative. (Du wirst zu Hause bleiben.)

4. Conditional Tense

a. Used in conclusion clause of conditional sentences referring to present time. (Wenn er hier wäre, so würde er uns sprechen.)

---

79 Tendency to simplify the language.
78 Spanish and French also use imperfect in this manner. English must here use Pluperfect Tense. (He had been living, etc.)
79 Near future time may be replaced by present tense.
80 As in Spanish and French.
81 As in other languages.
82 The conditional tense in German is never used in the "if" clause.
83 Form II of the present subjunctive (past subjunctive) may also be used here.
I. Tenses - Uses of (cont.)

5. Present Perfect
   a. To report isolated past occurrences.
      (Ich habe ihn gestern gesehen.)
   b. To denote a past action or state complete at present time.
      (Ich habe es getan.)
   c. To replace future perfect tense after wenn with reference to future time.
      (Wenn er gekommen ist...)®

6. Pluperfect®
   a. To denote a past state which resulted from a previous action or an action already completed prior to another verb in the past. (Er hatte diese Frage erwartet ehe ich die Frage gestellt habe.)

7. Future Perfect
   a. To denote that an act will be completed at some future time. (Er wird gegangen sein.)
   b. To denote probability in past time. (Er wird wohl hier gewesen sein.)®

8. Conditional Perfect
   a. Used in conclusion clause of conditional sentences referring to past time. (Wenn er hier gewesen ware, so würde er uns gesprochen haben.)®
   b. To denote what would have happened. (Er würde es versucht haben.)

® Most used tense in German to translate the English simple past. Comparable to French use of present perfect and Spanish use of pretérito.
®® Like other languages.
®® Similar to pluperfect tenses of other languages.
®® As in Spanish and French.
®® May be replaced by Form II of present perfect subjunctive (past subjunctive).
I. Tenses - Uses of (cont.)

B. Subjunctive

1. Present Tense (Form I)
   a. To denote what is going on, said or believed in present time.
   b. In indirect discourse, the verb of the subjunctive mood will be in present time if the verb was in present time when in direct discourse, regardless of the tense of the main verb. (Er sagte, dass er krank sei (or ware).

2. Past Tense (Present Tense, Form II)
   a. In both clauses of a contrary to fact condition statement in present time.
   b. In indirect discourse if the verb in direct discourse was of past tense.
   c. To replace the present subjunctive, Form I, wherever that form is identical with the present indicative.

3. Future Subjunctive
   a. To denote what will be going on.
   b. In indirect discourse if the verb in direct discourse was of the future tense.

4. Present Perfect Subjunctive (Form I)
   a. To denote that which is completed or thought to be completed.

5. Pluperfect Subjunctive (Present Perfect Subjunctive, Form II)
   a. To denote that which is completed or thought to be completed.
   b. In both parts of a contrary to fact conditional sentence in past time.
   c. To replace present perfect subjunctive, Form I, when it is identical with the present perfect indicative.

---

89 As in the other languages (French and Spanish) the tense of the subjunctive mood depends largely upon the tense of the main verb.
90 The conditional tense may be used in the conclusion clause if desired. Other languages also use past subjunctive to denote present time in such sentences.
91 May also use conditional tense.
92 Other languages use pluperfect subjunctive in such cases also. In the conclusion clause of such sentences, Form II may be replaced by the conditional perfect tense in German.
I. Tenses - Uses of (cont.)

6. Future Perfect Subjunctive
   a. To denote what will have happened.

II. Uses of Moods

A. Indicative
   1. To represent a reality.
   2. To express (truth) facts.

B. Subjunctive
   1. Uses of
      a. To denote that which is asked, demanded, reported, thought, desired, possible, or contrary to fact.
      b. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses.
         1) To supply missing forms of the imperative (indirect imperative). (Gehen wir!)
         2) To express a wish (optative subjunctive). (Gott sei Dank!)
         3) To denote that which is possible. (potential subjunctive) (Ich hätte gern...)95
         4) To denote modest opinion (diplomatic subjunctive). (Ich dachte.)
   c. Subjunctive in Noun Clauses.
      1) After verbs of believing, thinking, doubting, fearing, hoping, etc., if uncertainty is implied. (Sie glaubt, dass er kein geld habe.)94
      2) In indirect discourse unless the present tense is used and the speaker indorses the statement as being true, in which case the indicative is used. In the other tenses the subjunctive is generally used. (Er sagte, dass er krank sei.)95

---

93 This usage is peculiar to German. The other languages use the conditional tense for such purposes.
94 If no uncertainty is implied, the indicative is used. (Sie glaubt, dass er kein geld hat.)
95 Peculiar use of the subjunctive found only in the German language.
II. Use of Moods (cont.)

d. In Contrary to Fact Conditions.
   (1) If refers to present time the past
       subjunctive (present subjunctive,
       Form II) is used. (Wäre er hier,
       so halfe er uns.)

   (2) If refers to past time the plu-
       perfect subjunctive (present
       perfect subjunctive, form II) is
       used. (Wäre er hier gewesen, so
       hätte er etwas getan.)

2. Substitutes for the Subjunctive
   a. The conditional tense may generally be
      used to replace the future subjunctive
      in indirect discourse. (Er sagte, dass
      sie morgen arbeiten würden (or werden).)

   b. The conditional tense may replace the
      present subjunctive, form II, in con-
      clusion clause of a contrary to fact
      statement. (Wäre er hier, so würde er
      uns helfen.)

   c. The conditional perfect tense may re-
      place the present perfect subjunctive,
      form II, in the conclusion clause of a
      contrary to fact statement. (Wäre er
      hier gewesen, so würde er etwas getan
      haben.)

3. Sequence of Subjunctive Tenses
   a. Generally the same tense of the verb is
      used in the indirect statement that was
      used in the direct form.

   b. Influences affecting tense of dependent
      subjunctive.
      (1) Tense of verb in direct form.
      (2) Tense of principal verb.
      (3) Necessity to change tense in order
          to distinguish it from indicative
          mood.

---

96 The conditional tense may replace the subjunctive in
the conclusion clause. (Wäre er hier, so würde er uns helfen.)

97 The conditional perfect tense may replace the sub-
subjunctive in the conclusion clause. (Wäre er hier gewesen, so
würde er etwas getan haben.)
II. Use of Moods (cont.)

c. Principles of Tense Sequence

(1) After a present or future indicative tense in the independent clause, the tense of the dependent subjunctive verb will generally remain unchanged except that a past indicative verb becomes a present perfect subjunctive.

(2) After a past tense indicative in the independent clause there are several possibilities.
   (a) A natural present may remain or become a past (Form II, present.)
   (b) A natural past indicative becomes present perfect, Form I.
   (c) A natural future remains future subjunctive.

C. Imperative Mood

1. Formation - see page 125.
2. Uses
   a. To give commands. (Gehe!)
   b. To make suggestions. (Gehen wir bald.)
3. Substitutes for:
   a. Use of infinitive. (Rechts fahren!)
   b. Use of past participle alone. (hinaufgeschaut)
   c. Use of present indicative. (Du kommst mit.)
   d. Use of future indicative. (Du wirst mitkommen.)
   e. Use of lassen with infinitive. (Lasse mich es dir sagen!)

III. Voice

A. Active
1. To denote that the subject does the acting.

---

58 Form I of the subjunctive present is preferable to Form II in indirect statements but Form II is used when Form I is identical with the indicative.
99 Or may be replaced by conditional.
100 Uncommon.
101 This is subjunctive.
III. Voice (cont.)

2. To stress the verb or the action and not the subject or the receiving of the action.

B. Passive Voice

1. Formation - see page 126.
2. Uses
   a. To denote that the action of the verb is received by the subject, thus making the subject the subject object.
   b. To stress the subject and not the verb. (to stress the receiving of the action and not the action itself)
3. Substitutes for Passive Voice
   a. Use of indefinite man. (Man kaufte es.)
   b. Use of zu plus infinitive. (Was ist zu sagen?)
   c. Use of lassen plus infinitive (Das lässt sich tun).
   d. Use of reflexive construction (Es findet sich bald).
   e. Use of past participle of a transitive verb as adjective (der gefällte Baum).

C. Reflexive

1. Formation - see page 126.
2. Uses
   a. To denote that the subject reacts upon itself, both doing and receiving the action of the verb.
   b. As substitute for passive voice.

D. Reciprocal

1. Formation - see page 126.

---

102 Only transitive verbs admit of passive form, although intransitive verbs may be used as impersonal passives. This is true of all languages. The agent in German is accompanied by von if the agent is animate, if inanimate by durch. (This translates the by of English.) In English, German, and French the true passive may be expressed without an accompanying agent. In Spanish the agent must be expressed in true passive voice.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
III. Voice (cont.)

2. Uses

a. To denote that the various components of compound subject react upon one another. (Sie lieben sich (einander.)

IV. Auxiliary Verbs

A. Of Perfect Tenses

1. Haben - uses of

a. To form perfect tenses of all transitive verbs and many intransitive verbs not denoting motion or change of condition.

b. As independent verb to translate English to have.

2. Sein - uses of

a. To form perfect tenses of intransitive verbs of motion and change of condition. (bleiben, geschehen, gehen)

b. To form perfect tenses of sein, werden.

c. As independent verb to translate English to be.

B. Of Future and Conditional Tenses

1. Warden

a. Conjugated in present tense plus infinitive forms, future tenses.

b. Conjugated in past subjunctive tense plus infinitive forms conditional tenses.

c. With past participle to form passive voice.

d. As independent verb to translate English to become.

C. Quasi-Auxiliary Verbs (Infinitive Auxiliaries)

1. Modals

a. Dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen.

(1) Dürfen denotes permission, right.

(ich darf das tun - I am allowed to do that.)

---

103 As in French there are two auxiliaries for perfect tenses in German. English and Spanish have but one.

104 Those verbs immediately followed by infinitive (without zu). If the dependent infinitive is clearly understood, it may be omitted after a modal.
IV. Auxiliary Verbs (cont.)

(2) Können denotes ability. (Ich kann das tun - I am able to do that.)

(3) Mögen denotes desire, possibility, liking. (Ich mag das tun - I like to do that.)

(4) Müssen denotes obligation, necessity. (Ich muss das tun - I must do that.)

(5) Sollen denotes obligation, something claimed. (Ich soll das tun - I ought to do that.)

(6) Wollen denotes will, desire, intention, that which is about to be done. (Ich will das tun - I intend to do that, etc.)

2. Tun\textsuperscript{106}, lassen, heissen, machen, sehen, hören, helfen, Lehren, lernen, fühlen.\textsuperscript{107}

a. Tun. (Ich tate das Haus nicht verkaufen.)

b. Lassen denotes having or making something. (Er liess ein Haus bauen.)

c. Heissen denotes bidding. (Ich heisse ihn kommen.)

d. Machen denotes having something done, bidding. (Er macht sie gehen.)

e. Sehen denotes seeing. (Ich sehe ihn spielen.)

f. Hören denotes hearing something. (Ich höre ihn singen.)

g. Helfen denotes helping. (Ich helfe ihm es tragen.)

h. Lehren denotes teaching. (Ich lehre ihn Deutsch sprechen.)

i. Lernen denotes learning. (Ich lerne Deutsch sprechen.)

j. Fühlen denotes feeling. (Sie fühlte das Kind sich bewegen.)

D. Auxiliary of Passive Voice

1. Werden conjugated in desired tense plus past participle of the verb in question forms the passive voice.

\textsuperscript{106}Müssen denotes stronger obligation than sollen.

\textsuperscript{107}Tun used as an auxiliary has an umlaut in the past tense. This is found mainly in German dialects.

\textsuperscript{107}Much the same as modals, may be used with infinitive not preceded by zu; have two past participial forms.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
V. Infinitive

A. Uses Of
1. As a noun. (lernen das Lernen.)
2. As complement of verbs with zu. (Es ist nicht leicht, Deutsch zu lernen.)
3. With lassen.
   a. To denote imperative force. (Lasse ein Licht holen.)
   b. To denote having something done. (Er liess ein Haus bauen.)
4. With bleiben, finden, haben, liegen, stehen, to denote status. (Alles blieb stehen.)
5. With certain verbs of motion to form set phrases. (Spazieren gehen.)
6. To denote passive force. (Das ist zu erwarten.)
7. To denote imperative force. (Rechts fahren!)
8. After such expressions as anstatt...zu, ohne...zu, um...zu. (Er arbeitet um Geld zu verdienen.)

VI. Past Participle

A. Uses Of
1. To form all perfect tenses.
2. With conjugated form of werden to form passive voice.
3. As an adjective. (das verlorene Geld)
4. As an adverb. (ein verflucht schlauer Knabe)
5. As a noun. (die Geliebte)
6. As an adjective from transitive verbs to denote passive force. (der gefallte Baum)
7. As appositional predicate. (Da war er, entfernt von mir.)

---

108 An infinitive used as a noun is always neuter gender, forms no plural, is declined as first declension noun. Used as a noun, the infinitive takes adjective modifiers, not adverbs.
109 The infinitive is used as a complement without zu after the modals and quasi-auxiliaries. (Er half uns es tragen.)
110 English here uses present participle - to go walking, hunting.
111 After instead of and without, English uses present participle. After in order to, English uses infinitive, as in German.
VII. Present Participle

A. Uses Of
1. As adjective. (der arbeitende Mann)
2. As a noun. (der Reisende)
3. As an adverb. (in auffallend kurzer Zeit)
4. After sein to denote adjectival force.\(^8\)

Spanish

For conjugation and principal parts, etc., see Inflection of Spanish Verb.

I. Use of Tenses

A. Indicative Tenses
1. Present Tense
   a. To denote an act or state going on in present time. (El habla - he speaks, does speak, is speaking.)
   b. As substitute for imperfect and pretense tense in narrations. (Historical present.)\(^3\)
   c. As substitute for near future. (Mañana hay una baile.)\(^3\)
   d. After si in conditional clause expressing present or future time. (Si yo voy mañana.)\(^3\)
   e. After por poco to denote past time. (Por poco pierdo la vida - I almost lost my life.)\(^4\)
   f. With hacer---que to denote past activity continuing into present. (Hace mucho tiempo que estoy aquí.)\(^5\)
   g. Present tense of ir plus a and infinitive to denote future time. (Voy a trabajar mañana.)\(^6\)

\(^8\) In English this forms progressive tense. In German this is not so. The participle merely denotes adjectival force.
\(^3\) As in other languages.
\(^4\) Peculiar to Spanish.
\(^5\) As in French and German. English present perfect tense here.
\(^6\) Comparable to English going to and French aller plus infinitive.
1. Use of Tenses (cont.)

H. Present tense of haber plus de to express probability. (Ha de ser Juan.)

2. Imperfect Tense

a. To denote continuance of an action or state in past time. (Cuando yo estaba en el campo.)
b. To denote an act or state in past time which was going on contemporaneously with or interrupted by some other past act. (Yo escribía cuando el llegó.)
c. To denote habitual or repeated action in the past. (Estudiaba el español tres horas el día.)
d. With hacer...que to denote a past activity carried on for some time in the past up until a more recent past time. (Hacía mucho tiempo que estaba allí.)
e. To denote past descriptions. (Era un buen hombre.)

3. Preterite Tense

a. To denote isolated events existing in past time. (Escribí una carta ayer.)
b. Historical tense.
c. To interrupt the action of an imperfect verb. (Escribía cuando el llegó.)
d. To definitely limit an act as occurring in the past. (La guerra continuó seis años.)
e. To describe a series of past acts. (Vino a la ciudad, fue al hotel y se acostó.)

4. Future Tense

a. To denote an act or state that will occur in the future. (Escribirá mañana.)
b. To denote probability in present time. (Será Juan.)
c. To denote imperative force. (No matarás.)

117 Comparable to French imperfect, German past, and English past progressive.
118 Translated in English by used to, was accustomed to, or would have in French and German. English here uses pluperfect tense.
119 As in French and German.
120 French would here use imperfect or past absolute.
121 As in French and German.
5. Conditional Tense
   a. To denote an event or state which, viewed from a past point, still belonged to the future (but which, regarded from actual present time, lay in the past). (Sabía que el llegaría.)
   b. In the conclusion clause of a contrary to fact statement in present time. (Si fuera rico, no trabajaría.)
   c. To express probability in past time. (Sería Juan.)
   d. To express a desire in present time. (Desearía hablar con Vd.)

6. Present Perfect
   a. To denote a past action complete at present time. (He hablado con ellos.)

7. Pluperfect
   a. To denote a past action or state already terminated at some point in the past. (Había hablado cuando el llegó.)

8. Preterite Perfect
   a. To express a past event which immediately preceded another past event. (Así que hubimos llegado, fuimos a su casa.)

---

As in other languages. May also be replaced by imperfect subjunctive.

As in French and German.

As in French and English. Instead of using conditional tense of querer, quisiera (Imperfect subjunctive) is used in order to avoid ambiguity with the imperfect form quería.

The present perfect tense in Spanish corresponds more closely to the present perfect tense in English than do the present perfect tenses of German and French, which correspond and are used much more frequently than this tense in Spanish and English.

Corresponds in the main to English pluperfect. Most used past perfect tense in Spanish.

Corresponds in this one instance, when it is obligatory. Comparable to French past anterior. French and Spanish are the only two languages which have two past perfect tenses. (French has three.)

This tense must always be preceded by an adverbial conjunction (such as apenas, no bien, en cuanto, así que, tan pronto como, etc.)
I. Use of Tenses (cont.)

9. Future Perfect
   a. To denote that an act will have been done some time in the future. (Habremos terminado esta obra mañana.)
   b. To express surprise or probability in questions to denote past time. (Habrá tenido interés en esto?)
   c. To denote probability in past time. (Habré salido.)

10. Conditional Perfect
    a. Is related to conditional tense in same manner as is the future perfect tense related to the future tense.
    b. Used in conclusion clause of a contrary to fact statement referring to past time. (Si hubiera podido hacerlo, te habría ayudado.)
    c. To express probability in past perfect time. (Habría sido muy bonita.)

B. Subjunctive

1. Present Tense
   a. To express present and future time in subjunctive mood.
   b. To express a wish in present time.

2. Imperfect
   a. To express what was going on.
   b. To express an unrealized wish.
   c. To express preterite and imperfect indicative and conditional tenses in subjunctive mood.
   d. To express softened assertions. (Quisiera verle.)

3. Preterite
   a. To express preterite and conditional tenses indicative in subjunctive mood.
   b. To denote what was going on.
   c. To denote an unrealized wish.

129 As in French and German.
130 May be replaced by pluperfect subjunctive.
131 The time of the verb in the subjunctive mood is partly dependent upon the time of the independent verb. See Sequence of Tenses for Subjunctive Mood.
I. Use of Tenses (cont.)

4. Future
   a. To apply to future contingency which depends upon doubt or uncertainty.

5. Present Perfect
   a. To express perfect and future perfect indicative mood in the subjunctive mood.
   b. To denote that which is complete.

6. Pluperfect (two forms)
   a. To express pluperfect and perfect conditional indicative tenses in subjunctive mood.
   b. To denote that which was complete at some time in the past.

II. Uses of Moods

A. Indicative Mood
   1. To represent a reality.
   2. To assume that a statement is true.
   3. To denote truth.
   4. To represent that which is believed to be true.

B. Subjunctive Mood
   1. Uses
      a. To denote that which is stated is not necessarily intended as being a fact.
      b. To express hope, wish.
      c. The mood of doubt.
      d. Subjunctive in independent clauses.
         (1) In direct commands. (Lleva Vd. el sombrero.) (No te vayas.)
         (2) To express a wish. (¡Ojalá que venga pronto!)
         (3) To translate the indirect imperative (let..., etc., in English.)
            (¡Que vaya!)

132 Many grammarians claim that the future subjunctive is now an obsolete tense but Ramsay (A Textbook of Modern Spanish) claims it does exist in this one use. (Page 338 # 925)

133 In all forms except the familiar affirmative.

134 After ojalá the present subjunctive is used if there is a possibility that the wish be fulfilled. If this is not possible, the imperfect subjunctive is used. (¡Ojalá que hubiese estado allí!)
II. Uses of Moods (cont.)

e. Subjunctive in dependent clauses.

(1) Noun Clauses
(a) After verbs of wishing, commanding, etc. (Quieren que yo lo haga.)
(b) After verbs of doubt or uncertainty or negative belief. (Dudo que vuelvan.)
(c) After a verb of emotion (fear, hope, surprise, etc.) (Temo que no lo permitan.)
(d) After impersonal expressions. (Es lástima que no pueda Vd. venir.)
(e) In softened assertions. (Quisiera verle.)

(2) Adjective Clauses
(a) After an indefinite antecedent. (Quiero ver a un joven que sepa hablar español.)
(b) After indefinite expressions such as nadie, nada, cualquier persona, etc. (No conozco a nadie que lo sepa.)
(c) With por...que to translate English however. (Por mucho que Vd. diga, no me convencerá.)

(3) Adverbial Clauses
(a) After conjunctions of time or extent if uncertainty is implied. (Esperaré hasta que yo llegue.)

---

136 These usages are comparable to the French use of subjunctive in noun clauses.
136 Cf. Creer used in affirmative is followed by indicative, used negatively, is followed by subjunctive. Duda, used affirmatively is followed by subjunctive, used negatively is followed by indicative.
137 Impersonal verbs denoting certainty are followed by the indicative (as in French). (Es cierto que vendrá.)
138 As in French.
139 The indicative is used after cuando if it follows imperative or a verb asking or giving information.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
II. Uses of Moods (cont.)

(b) After conjunctions of purpose.
(such as a fin de que, de modo que, etc.)
(Habla Vd. en voz alta a fin de que le orgamos.)

(c) After conjunctions of result.
(such as tal que, para que, de tal modo que, etc.)
(Escribió con cuidado de tal modo que pudimos leer sus cartas fácilmente.)

(d) After conjunctions of restriction or concession (a pesar de que, aunque, etc.)
(Aunque llueva, iremos.)

(e) After conjunctions of proviso.
(con tal de que, a condición de que.)
(Con tal de que no venga nadie, lo terminaré mañana.)

f. Subjunctive in Contrary to Fact Conditional Sentences. (Si estuviera aquí, estudiaría.
(Si hubiera estado aquí ayer, hubiera (habría) estudiado.)

2. Substitutes for the Subjunctive
a. Use of infinitive phrase when main verb and subordinate verb are governed by the same verb.
(Quiero ir, not quiero que yo vaya.)

b. Some verbs permit of infinitive substitution for subjunctive even if there is a change in subject, but where the object of the main verb becomes subject of the dependent verb.
(Me permite Vd. entrar? or ¿Permite Vd. que yo entre?)

---

140 De modo (manera) que when means therefore are followed by the indicative. (Llovió, de modo que no pudieron salir.)
141 Aunque when an accomplished fact is stated is followed by the indicative. (Aunque habla mucho, no dice nada.)
142 The subjunctive may be used in both clauses or it may be replaced by the conditional tenses in the conclusion clauses.
143 All impersonal verbs permit of this substitution.
II. Uses of Moods (cont.)

c. In conclusion clause of contrary to fact statements, the conditional tenses may be used. (Si estuviera aquí ahora, él hablaría contigo. Si hubiera estado aquí ayer, hubiera hablado contigo (or habría hablado contigo.)

3. Sequence of Tense for Subjunctive

a. When the action of the two verbs take place contemporaneously or the dependent verb takes place after the main verb, the following sequence is used.

(a) Present indicative takes present subjunctive.
(b) Imperfect indicative takes imperfect or preterite subjunctive.
(c) Preterite indicative takes imperfect or preterite subjunctive.
(d) Future indicative takes present subjunctive.
(e) Conditional indicative takes imperfect or preterite subjunctive.
(f) Present perfect indicative takes present subjunctive.
(g) Pluperfect subjunctive takes imperfect or preterite subjunctive.

b. When the action of the dependent verb takes place before the action of the main verb, the following sequence is used.

(a) Present indicative takes present perfect subjunctive.
(b) Imperfect indicative takes pluperfect or preterite perfect subjunctive.

144 See page 213, note 131.
145 In Spanish commanding verbs in the future, present, or present perfect tenses require a dependent subjunctive verb in the present tense. A commanding verb used in any other tense will require the imperfect or preterite subjunctive. A volitional verb in the present, future or present perfect tense may require a dependent subjunctive verb in any tense. Any other indicative tense of a volitional verb will take either imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive dependent verb.
146 In all cases listed under a above, the perfect subjunctive or the imperfect subjunctive replaces the present subjunctive and the pluperfect or preterite subjunctive replaces the imperfect subjunctive when the dependent verb precedes the main verb in point of time.
II. Uses of Moods (cont.)

C. Imperative Mood

1. Formation — see page 155.
2. Uses
   a. To give commands. (Hazlo ahora.)
   b. To make suggestions. (Cantemos.)
   c. Imperative words used in exclamations. (Vayal)

3. Substitutes for:
   a. Use of future tense. (No matarás.)
   b. Use of infinitive. (¡No correr!)  

III. Voice

A. Active Voice

1. To denote that the subject does the acting.
2. To stress the verb or the action, not the subject or the receiving of the action.

B. Passive Voice

1. Formation — see page 156.
2. Uses
   a. To denote that the subject receives the action of the verb, thus becoming subject-object.
   b. To stress the receiving of the action and not the action itself.

3. Substitutes for Passive
   a. Use of reflexive if no agent is expressed. (Aquí se habla español.)
   b. Impersonal subject with reflexive. (Se dice que él es rico.)

147 Unlike the other languages, the true passive voice in Spanish must have the agent expressed and there is no substitute for this form. The agent in Spanish is accompanied by por (translates English by) if the verb denotes physical activity; if the verb denotes mental activity it is translated by de. (Comparable to French use of par and de.)

148 Se dice - on dit - man sagt - one says (it is said.) Se plus verb is equivalent to French use of on and German use of man, English use of one, they, etc.
III. Voice (cont.)

c. Use of \textit{ser de plus infinitive}. (No es de olvidar.)
d. Static Passive (condition). \textit{Estar plus past participle}. (la ventana esta abierta)

C. Reflexive
1. Formation—see page 157.
2. Uses
   a. To denote that the subject reacts upon itself, both doing and receiving the action.
   b. As substitute for passive voice.
   c. As substitute for reciprocal verbs.

D. Reciprocal
1. Formation—see page 157.
2. Uses
   a. To denote that a plural subject reacts upon itself, i.e. each part reacts upon the other. (Ellos se quieren los unos a los otros.)

IV. Auxiliary Verbs
A. Perfect Tense Auxiliaries
1. \textit{Haber}—uses of
   a. To form all perfect tenses.
   b. In impersonal expressions (used only in third person singular but in any tense). (Hay muchos personas allí.)
   c. To denote obligation when followed by \textit{de} and infinitive. (Hemos de detenernos)
   d. To express probability when followed by \textit{de} and infinitive. (Ha de ser rico.)
   e. To express necessity when followed by \textit{que} and infinitive. (Hay que escribir.)

B. Quasi—Auxiliary Verbs (infinitive and tense auxiliaries)

149Past participle is an adjective here, thus agrees in number and gender with the subject.

150Like English, but unlike French and German, there is only one auxiliary to the perfect tenses in Spanish. Unlike all other languages, this verb (haber) cannot be used as an independent verb to translate (to have, avoir, haben). As an independent verb, haber can only be used in impersonal expressions or to denote probability or to denote obligation and necessity.
IV. Auxiliary Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>andar</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deber</td>
<td>to owe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dejar</td>
<td>to leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descubrir</td>
<td>to discover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caer</td>
<td>to fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estar</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer</td>
<td>to make, do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ir</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llegar</td>
<td>to arrive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llevar</td>
<td>to carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandar</td>
<td>to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poder</td>
<td>to be able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quedar</td>
<td>to remain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tener</td>
<td>to have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Andar--used as auxiliary with present participle of verbs to denote continuous action. (Anda cantando) 

2. Deber--before infinitive denotes duty or necessity, also probability when it precedes infinitive. (Debe ayudarnos) (Debe de estar en casa)

3. Dejar--used with past participles of verbs denotes condition. (Deja cerrado el cajón)

4. Descubrir--used with past participles to denote condition. (Descubre escondido el tesoro).

5. Caer--used with past participle to denote condition. (Cae roto al suelo).

6. Estar--used with present participle to form progressive tenses. (Está corriendo).

7. Hacer--used with infinitive denotes having something done. (Hace construir la casa)

8. Ir--used with present participle to denote continuous action. (Iba corriendo la calle abajo)

9. Llegar--used with past participle to denote a condition. (El muchacho llega cansado.)

10. Llevar--idiomatically used with past participle. (Llevo escritas dos cartas)

---

151 *Andar as contrasted with *ir. *Andar* applies to animals, inanimate objects and the undefined going of persons. *Ir* is more specific.

152 Comparable to English, *ought to*; German, *müsst* or *sollen*; and French *devoir*.

153 *Hacer* and *mandar* are interchangeable in this usage. This usage of *hacer* is comparable to German *lassen* plus infinitive and French *faire*. English here uses past participle.

154 When this usage is made of *llevar*, the past participle must agree in number and gender with the object.
IV. Auxiliary Verbs (cont.)

11. **Mandar**—used with infinitive to denote having something done. (Manda construir la casa)\(^{155}\)

12. **Poder**—used with infinitive denotes ability, permisibility, possibility of an occurrence. (Puede salir. Puede ser verdad).

13. **Quedar**—used with past participle to denote condition. (Queda inhabitado).

14. **Tener**—may be used with past participle to denote actual ownership. The past participle in such case must have an object. (El traje que tengo comprado.)

C. Auxiliary of Passive Voice\(^{156}\)

1. Ser
   a. Conjugated form of ser in desired tense plus past participle of verb which agrees in number and person with the subject.

D. Auxiliary of Progressive Tenses

1. **Estar** (estoy escribiendo).

V. Infinitive—Uses of

A. As verbal noun to translate English present participle. (Antes de ir.)

B. With adjectival force after verbs of perception. (La oímos tocar el piano.)

C. To replace the imperative. (¡No correr!)

D. After **hacer**, **mandar** to denote having something done. (Hace construir la casa.)

E. After **ser** and preceded by **de** has passive value. (No es de olvidar.)

F. As substantive. (El conocer eso no vale nada.)

G. Infinitive constructions as substitutes for clauses. (Al asomar el día, estaba todavía escribiendo.)

H. As verbal object. (Sabe hablar español.)

I. De plus infinitive has passive significance. (Bueno de comer.)

J. To replace the subjunctive where the subject of both clauses is the same. (Quiiero verle)

---

\(^{155}\)Interchangeable with **hacer** in this expression.

\(^{156}\)Only used when agent is expressed.
V. Infinitive—Uses of (cont.)
K. To replace the subjunctive after impersonal expressions when the object of the main verb is the subject of the dependent verb. (Me permite Vd. entrar?)
L. Infinitive with para translates English in order to. (Es necesario trabajar para vivir.)

VI. Past Participle—Uses of
A. To form all perfect tenses.
B. To form passive voice with ser.
C. As an adjective.157
D. To replace a clause. (Idas ellas, no quería permanecer.)

VII. Present Participle—Uses of
A. With estar to form progressive tenses. (Estoy escribiendo.)
B. In descriptions and narrations in participial phrases to replace clauses. (La encontré volviendo yo de la tienda.)
C. To describe the action of the verb. (Vino corriendo.)

157When used as an adjective, the past participle has full adjectival inflection and agrees as any adjective.
Comparison and Comment

I. Uses of Tenses

A. Present

1. The present tense in all languages signifies action which is going on at the present time.
   - Il écrit.
   - Er schreibt.
   - El escribe.
   - I write.

2. All of the languages use the present tense in an "if" clause to denote future time.
   - Si je vais, je la verrai.
   - Wenn ich gehe, werde ich sie sehen.
   - Si yo voy, la vere.
   - If I go, I shall see her.

3. In French, German and Spanish, the present tense is used to denote an act begun in the past which continues up into the present time. (English here uses present perfect.)
   - Je suis ici depuis longtemps.
   - Ich bin lange hier.
   - Hace mucho tiempo que estoy aquí.
   - I have been here a long time.

4. In French, German and Spanish, the present tense is used to denote an immediate future.
   (English may use present progressive, present, or future.
   - Il revient demain.
   - Er kommt morgen zurück.
   - El viene mañana.
   - He is coming tomorrow.

5. The English verbal phrase going to denoting future time is expressed in French by aller plus an infinitive, in German by wollen or im Begriffe sein in Spanish by ir a plus infinitive.
   - Je vais l'acheter.
   - Er will es kaufen. Er ist im Begriffe, es zu kaufen.
   - El va a comprarlo.
   - He is going to buy it.

---

158 Im Begriffe sein actually denotes very immediate future; wollen rather denotes intention. Both may translate to be on the point of.
I. Uses of Tenses (cont.)

B. Imperfect Tense

1. The German, French and Spanish imperfect tenses are best translated in English by the past progressive tense, since the primary use of the imperfect tense in those languages is to denote a continuous action, the completion of which is not indicated.

2. In French, Spanish and German the imperfect tense is used to denote an action going on in the past, which was interrupted by another past act.
   - Il étudiait quand je suis arrivé.
   - Er studierte, als ich ankam.
   - El estudiaba cuando llegué.
   - He was studying when I arrived.

3. The imperfect tense in French, German and Spanish translates the English verbal phrases used to, was accustomed to, would, denoting habitual past action.
   - Il étudiait le français deux heures le jour.
   - Er studierte Deutsch zwei Stunden den Tag.
   - El estudiaba el español dos horas el día.
   - He used to study English two hours a day.

4. In French, German and Spanish the imperfect tense is used to denote a past action continuing up until a more recent past time. (English here uses pluperfect.)
   - Il y avait un mois que j'étais là quand il était arrivé.
   - Er war seit einem Monat dort, als ich ankam.
   - El estaba allí hacía un mes cuando llegué.
   - He had been there a month when I arrived.

5. The French use of the imperfect tense after si in contrary to fact, conditional statements in the present time, corresponds to the English use of the imperfect tense.

159After als, the imperfect tense is preferable to the present perfect.
I. Uses of Tenses (cont.)
(Spanish and German require subjunctive mood.)

Si j'avais le temps, j'irais.
Wenn er nur die zeit hätte, so ginge er.
Si tuviera tiempo, iría.
If I had time, I should go.

6. In all languages the imperfect tense is the tense of past descriptions.
Elle était très belle.
Sie war sehr schön.
Ella era muy bonita.
She was very pretty.

C. Past Absolute—French. (Peculiar to French language)

This tense is, in general, used only for historical purposes. As opposed to the imperfect tense, it definitely limits a past act as having been completed. One would expect this tense to correspond to the Spanish preterite, but this is not the case. French and German both use the present perfect tense as their main past tense.

D. Spanish Preterite, English Past, French and German Present, Perfect.

It is a peculiarity of the German and French languages that they use a compound tense (present perfect) as the main past tense (except in cases already mentioned when the imperfect is used). The German language does not adhere to this rule so strictly as the French, however, since in most cases the imperfect may be substituted in very long sentences with several clauses. French and Spanish both have two simple forms for past time but the Spanish language is the only one which uses both of these tenses in every-day usage.160

These tenses as listed above are comparable in the following respects:

---

160 French past absolute is used mostly for historical narration and very little in conversation or common style.
I. Uses of Tenses (cont.)

1. They are used to express isolated past actions.
   Je suis arrivé hier.
   Ich bin gestern angekommen.
   Llegué ayer.
   I arrived yesterday.

2. They are used to interrupt the action stated in the imperfect tense (past progressive in English).
   Il étudiait quand je suis arrivé.
   Er studierte, als ich ankam. 161
   El estudiaba cuando yo llegué.
   He was studying when I arrived.

The Spanish preterite is also used to denote a series of past actions. (Vino a la cuidad, compró un traje nuevo y volvió a casa.)

E. Future Tense

1. The future tense of all languages denotes action that will take place in the future.
   Vous irez.
   Sie werden gehen.
   Usted irá.
   You will go.

2. The future tense may be used as a substitute for the imperative in all languages.
   Tu resteras ici.
   Du wirst hier bleiben.
   Tu permanecerás aquí.
   You will remain here.

3. A peculiar use of the future tense exists in French, German and Spanish and English—the use of the future tense to express present time probability.
   Ce sera Jean.
   Es wird Johann sein.
   Sera Juan.
   It is probably John. (It will be John)

F. Conditional Tense

1. The conditional tense in all four languages denotes an action which, viewed from the past, lay in future time, but which viewed

---

161After als the imperfect is preferable to the present perfect tense.
I. Uses of Tenses (cont.)

from the present, still belonged to the past.

Je savais qu'il parlerait.
Ich wusste, dass er sprechen würde.
Yo sabía que él hablaría.
I knew that he would speak.

2. The conditional tense may be used in all of these languages in the result clause of a contrary-to-fact conditional statement, denoting present time.

S'il était ici, il nous parlerait.
Wenn er hier wäre, so würde er uns sprechen.
Si él estuviera aquí, nos hablaría.
If he were here, he would speak to us.

3. In French and Spanish the conditional tense may be used to denote probability in past time.

Ce serait Jean.
Sería Juan.
It was probably John.

4. In English, French and Spanish and German may be used to denote desire in present time.

Voudriez-vous me le dire?
<Desearía Ud. decírmelo?
Mochten Sie mir das sagen?
Would you care to tell it to me?

G. Present Perfect (see also No. D above for further uses of German and French present perfect.)

1. In all of these languages the present perfect tense denotes a past action now complete at present time.

Je l'ai fini.
Ich habe es beendet.
Lo he terminado.
I have finished it.

H. Pluperfect Tenses

1. In German and English there is only one pluperfect tense. There are two in Spanish and three in French.162

---

162 The French compound past anterior is used only in conversation as a substitute for the past anterior. For this reason it will not be considered here.
I. Uses of Tenses (cont.)

2. The past anterior (second pluperfect French tense) and the preterite perfect (second pluperfect Spanish tense) are comparable in usage since both are used to express a past event which immediately is followed by another past event. In French following such adverbial conjunctions as aussitôt que; in Spanish, así que).

Aussitôt qu'il eut fini, ils arrivèrent.
Así que el hubo terminado, ellos llegaron.

3. In most other cases the use of the pluperfect tense of all languages are in accord.
   a. To denote past action or state already complete at a point in the past.

   Il était parti quand je suis arrivé.
   Er war gegangen, als ich ankam.
   El había salido cuando yo llegué.
   He had gone when I arrived.

4. The French and English languages may also use the pluperfect tense in the condition clause of a contrary-to-fact conditional statement referring to past time. Spanish and German must here use subjunctive.

   Si je l'avais vu, je l'aurais dit.
   Si lo hubiera visto, lo habría dicho.
   If I had seen it, I should have said so.

I. Future Perfect

1. In all four languages the future perfect tense is used to denote an activity that will have been completed at some future time.

   Dans dix minutes il l'aura fini.
   Nach zehn Minuten wird er es beendet haben.
   Después de diez minutos él lo habrá terminado.
   He will have finished it in ten minutes.
I. Uses of Tenses (cont.)
2. In French, German, Spanish, and English, the future perfect tense is used to denote probability in past time.
   Il sera parti.
   Er wird gegangen sein.
   El habrá salido.
   He must have gone. (He will have gone.)

J. Conditional Perfect
1. In all four languages the conditional perfect tense is related to the conditional tense in the same way the future perfect tense is related to the future tense.

II. Subjunctive
A. Uses of
In all languages the subjunctive mood is the mood of doubt, command, or emotion. The English language has lost nearly all subjunctive inflection, the mood being designated rather by means of verbal phrases—may go, might go, etc. The German language has a unique usage for the subjunctive mood, but a usage which does lend color and meaning to the language. This usage is the subjunctive in indirect discourse, when the speaker or writer does not wish to endorse the statement as being true or if there is some doubt in his mind concerning the statement's verity.

In past tenses (i.e. statements made with the introductory verb in the past tense) the subjunctive mood is used in the dependent clause unless the subject of the introductory verb. Thus, Ich sagte, dass ich krank war, but, Er sagte, dass er krank sei. There is no doubt in the mind of the speaker that he himself was sick but there may be a doubt in his mind when he is recapitulating the words of another. In present tense (i.e. where main verb is present time, the subjunctive may or may not be used, with any subject, depending upon the attitude of the user. Thus, Er sagt, dass er krank sei—indicates that the speaker doubts the word "er", but, Er sagt, dass er krank ist—the speaker is assuming that "er" is telling the truth.
II. Subjunctive (cont.)

B. All four languages are alike in the use of the subjunctive in the following respects.
1. Use of subjunctive mood in commands.
   Ainsi soit-il!
   So sei es!
   Así sea!
   So be it!

2. Use of subjunctive mood to denote wish.
   Vive le roi!
   Lebe der König!
   Viva el rey!
   Long live the king!

C. The French, German and Spanish languages are alike in the following respects.
1. Subjunctive mood may be used in both clauses of a contrary-to-fact statement.
   S'il eût été ici, il nous eût aidé.
   Wäre er nur hier gewesen, so hätte er uns geholfen.
   Si el hubiera estado aquí, nos hubiera ayudado.
   If he had been here, he would have helped us.

D. French and Spanish are alike in the use of the subjunctive mood in the following respects.
1. Subjunctive in dependent noun clauses.
   a. After verbs of wishing.
      Je desire qu'il parte.
      Quiero que el salga.
      Quiero que el salga.
   b. After verbs of commanding.
      Vous ordonnez que je m'en aille.
      Usted manda que yo me vaya.
   c. After verbs denoting emotion.
      Je regrette qu'il soit parti.
      Siento que el haya salido.

---

163In French this would probably be replaced by the pluperfect indicative tense in the condition clause, and the conditional perfect in the conclusion clause since this form is most commonly used.

164In Spanish and German (and French—see footnote No.163) the subjunctive of the conclusion clause may be replaced by the conditional perfect tense. The subjunctive, however, must be used in the condition clause in Spanish and German.

165German also has this usage—Ich wünsche, dass er fortgehe, or, Ich wünsche, dass er fortgehen würde.)
II. Subjunctive (cont.)

   d. After verbs of doubting. 166
      Je doute qu'il vienne.
      Dudo que venga.

   e. After verbs of negative belief. 167
      Je ne croit pas qu'elle vienne.
      No creo él que ella venga.

   f. After impersonal expressions.
      Il est possible qu'il soit malade.
      Es posible que esté enfermo.

2. Subjunctive in dependent adjective clauses.

   a. After an indefinite antecedent.
      Je cherche un homme qui sache
      parler français.
      Busco a un hombre que sepa hablar
      español.

   b. After indefinite expressions such
      as personne (French), nadie (Span.)
      Je ne connais personne qui le sache.
      No conozco a nadie, que lo sepa.

3. Subjunctive in adverb clauses.

   a. After adverbial expressions denot­
ing purpose.
      J'écris ceci afin que vous sachie
      la vérité.
      Escribo eso a fin de que Vd. sepa
      la verdad.

   b. After conjunctions denoting con­
      cession.
      Bien qu'il soit riche, il n'est
      pas heureux.
      A pesar de que sea rico, no es feliz.

   c. After adverbial conjunctions of time
      if uncertainty is implied. 168
      J'irai avant qu'il parte.
      Iré antes de que él salga.

   d. After adverbial conjunctions of
      proviso.
      Je partirai à moins qu'il ne pleuve.
      Saldré con tal de que no llueva.

---

166 When used negatively, the dependent verb is
indicative in both languages. Je ne doute pas qu'il vienne.
No dudo que él viene.

167 When used affirmatively, the dependent verb
is indicative in both languages. Il croit qu'elle vient.
Cree que viene ella.

168 When referring to past time, however, there is
no uncertainty as to time element since both verbs have in
such cases definitely taken place; therefore, in both lan-

guages the indicative mood would be used. Il est allé
avant qu'elle est partie. El fue antes de que ella salió.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
II. Subjunctive (cont.)
e. After adverbial conjunctions of manner.
  Il partit sans que je le susse.
  Salió sin que yo lo supiera.

E. Substitutes for Subjunctive Mood.
1. All four languages may replace the subjunctive with an infinitive when the same subject governs both clauses.
   Je veux dormir.
   Ich will schlafen.
   Quiero dormir.
   I want to sleep.

2. All four languages may replace the subjunctive with an infinitive when the object of the introductory (main) verb becomes the subject of the dependent verb.
   Il me permet de venir.
   Er erlaubt mir zu kommen.
   El me permite venir.
   He allows me to come.

3. All languages may replace the subjunctive in the conclusion clause of a contrary-to-fact statement with the conditional tense (for present time) or the conditional perfect tense (for past time).
   S'il eut été ici, il nous eût (aurait) aidés.
   Ware er nur hier gewesen, hätte er uns geholfen (so würde er uns geholfen haben).
   Si el hubiera estado aquí, nos hubiera (habría) ayudado.
   If he had been here, he would have helped us.

III. Imperative
A. Uses
1. In all languages the imperative mood is used
   a. to denote commands
      Allez maintenant!

---

169 In French the subjunctive in the condition clause may be replaced by the imperfect (for present time) or pluperfect (for past time) indicative. In Spanish and German the verb in the condition clause must be subjunctive.
III. Imperative

Gehem Sie jetzt!
/Vaya Vd. ahora!
Go now!

2. To make suggestions

Allons.

Gehen wir.

Váyamos.

Let us go.

3. In French, Spanish and English the imperative forms may be used to denote exclamatory force.

Allez!

¡Vaya!

Go on!

B. Substitutes for Imperative

1. All four languages may replace the imperative mood with the future tense to express mild commands.

Tu ne tueras pas.

Du wirst nicht töten.

No matarás.

Thou shalt not kill.

2. In French, German and Spanish, the infinitive may be used to denote commands.

Aller à droite!

Rechts fahren!

¡Seguir por la derecha!

Keep to the right!

3. In German the past participle may be used with imperative force, although this usage is rare.

Hinaufgeschaut!

4. In German also simple present tense may be used to denote commands.

Du kommst mit.

IV. Active Voice

A. In all languages denotes that the subject does the action of the verb.

Il aime la fille.

Er liebt das Mädchen.

El ama a la muchacha.

He loves the girl.

V. Passive Voice

A. Uses
V. Passive Voice (cont.)

1. In all languages denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb, the action being done by someone or something else.
   - Le fille est aimée de lui.
   - Das Mädchen wird von ihm geliebt.
   - La muchacha es amada de él.
   The girl is loved by him.

B. Substitutes for

1. In French, German and Spanish the passive voice may be replaced in the following manners.
   a. Reflexive voice as substitute.
      - Il se trouvera bientôt.
      - Es findet sich bald.
      - Se hallará pronto.
      It will soon be found. (passive)

C. In all four languages the passive voice may be replaced by an indefinite expression. (Spanish here commonly uses reflexive voice although. (Dícen que es verdad may be used instead of Se dice que es verdad).
   - On dit cela.
   - Man sagt es.
   - Se lo dice. (lo dicen)
   One says. (it is said)

D. In all four languages the passive voice may be replaced by an infinite phrase.
   - Qu'est-ce à dire?
   - Was ist zu sagen?
   - ¿Qué hay para decir?
   What is to be said?
   - Il n'y a rien à faire.
   - Es gibt nichts zu tun.
   - No hay nada que hacer.
   There is nothing to be done.

E. In all languages the passive voice may be replaced by such expressions as to have plus past participle—English; faire plus infinitive—French; lassen plus infinitive—German; hacer plus infinitive—Spanish.170

170English here uses past participle. The other languages use infinitive.
V. Passive Voice (cont.)
Le ferez-vous vendre?
Werden Sie es verkaufen lassen?
¿Lo hará Vd. vender?
Will you have it sold?

VI. Reflexive Voice
A. In all four languages is used to denote that the subject both does and receives the action (the reception of the action actually is by the reflexive pronoun, but this pronoun merely stands for the subject).

Elle s'est amusée.
Sie hat sich unterhalten.
Ella se divirtió.
She amused (enjoyed) herself.

VII. Reciprocal Voice
A. In all four languages is used to denote that a compound or plural subject reacts upon itself, each part upon the other.

Ils s'aiment l'une l'autre.
Sie lieben sich (einander)
Ellos se aman el uno a la otra

VIII. Auxiliary Verbs
A. Perfect Tenses
1. English and Spanish have only one auxiliary verb which may be used in forming the perfect tenses— to have and haber.
2. It is a peculiarity of the Spanish language that its auxiliary (haber) cannot be used as an independent word denoting ownership as can the auxiliaries of all the other languages—to have, avoir, haben. Thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have taken.</td>
<td>Yo he tomado.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J'ai pris.</td>
<td>Ich habe genommen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J'ai un livre.</td>
<td>Ich habe ein Buch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

May also be expressed: Se aman a sí mismos, Se aman mutuamente.

Spanish haber may be used as an independent verb only in indefinite expressions. (Hay libros. Hay que hacer algo.)
VIII. Auxiliary Verbs

3. In French and German there are two auxiliary verbs used for the formation of perfect tenses (avoir and être; haben and sein). The usage of the two forms corresponds closely for each language.
   a. Avoir and haben are used in each language with transitive verbs and intransitive verbs not denoting motion or change of condition.173
      J'ai lu le livre.
      Ich habe das Buch gelesen.
   b. Être and Sein are used with intransitive verbs of motion or change of condition.
      Je suis allé.
      Ich bin gegangen.

4. One notable difference exists between the two languages in the use of the auxiliaries. French forms the perfect tenses of reflexive verbs with être; German with haben.
   Elle s'est réjouie.
   Sie hat sich gefreut.

B. Passive Voice Auxiliary

1. French, Spanish and English use the corresponding auxiliary expressing to be--être, ser. German uses werden--to become.
   Elle est louée.
   Sie wird gelobt.
   Ella es alabada (de el)174,175,176
   She is praised.

---

173 For exceptions see Verbs of each language.

174 Note agreement of past participle in French.

175 Note agreement of past participle in French and Spanish.

176 For this form of passive, the agent must be expressed in Spanish--true passive. In Common usage, however, one will find this form used without the agent just as the reflexive passive is commonly used with an agent.
VIII. Auxiliary Verbs (cont.)

C. Modal and Quasi-Auxiliaries

1. Devoir—Sollen—Deber—Should
   Je dois y aller.
   Ich soll dorthin gehen.
   Debo ir allí.
   I should go there.

2. Falloir—Müssen—Haber que—Must
   Il faut y aller.
   Man muss dorthin gehen.
   Hay que ir allí.
   One must go there.

3. Pouvoir—Poder—Können—Be able
   Il ne pouvait pas le faire.
   Er konnte das nicht tun.
   No podía hacerlo.
   He could not (was not able to) do that.

4. Vouloir—Mögen (wollen)—Querer—Want
   Je ne veux pas le savoir.
   Ich mag (will) das nicht wissen.
   No quiero saberlo.
   I don't want to know it.

5. Pouvoir—dürfen—Poder—Permission
   Puis-je le faire?
   Darf ich das tun?
   ¿Puedo hacerlo?
   May I do it?

6. Faire (laisser)—lassen—Hacer (mandar)
   Have done
   Il fait écrire la lettre.
   Er lässt den Brief schreiben.
   Hace escribir la carta.
   He has the letter written.

IX. Infinitive

A. Uses

1. The infinitive may be used as substantive
   in all four languages.
   Chanter cela ne vaut rien \(178, 179\)
   Das Singen dieses gilt nichts \(178, 179\)
   El cantar eso no vale nada \(178, 179\)

---

177 English uses past participle. Other languages use infinitive.

178 Note use of double negative in French and Spanish. This does not occur in German.

179 Note use of article in Spanish and German. Article need not be used in French.
IX. Infinitive (Cont.)

2. The infinitive may be used as a complement to the verb in all four languages.
   Il sait parler français.
   Er kann Deutsch sprechen.
   Puede hablar español.
   He can speak English.

3. The infinitive may be used in French, Spanish and German as substitute for imperative.
   Aller à droit!
   Rechts fahren!
   ¡Seguir por la derecha!
   Keep to the right! (imperative)

4. The infinitive may be used as substitute for the subjunctive mood when the subject of the introductory verb is the subject of the dependent verb. (All languages).
   Je veux y aller.
   Ich will dorthin gehen.
   Quiero ir allí.
   I want to go there.

5. Infinitive may be used in all languages to replace the subjunctive if the object of the introductory verb is the subject of the dependent verb.
   Il me permet de chanter.
   Er erlaubt mir zu singen.
   El me permite cantar.
   He allows me to sing.

6. Infinitive is used to denote purpose when following certain prepositions: Pour—French; um—German; para—Spanish; in order to—English.
   Il faut manger pour vivre.
   Man muss essen, um zu leben.
   Hay que comer para vivir.
   It is necessary to eat in order to live.

7. Infinitive may be used to denote passive force in all languages.
   Bon à manger.
   Gut zu essen.
   Bueno de comer.
   Good to eat.

180Note that in Spanish there is no preposition before the infinitive.
9. The infinitive is used in French, German and Spanish after verbs of perception.

81) J'entends chanter l'enfant.
Ich hore das Kind singen.
Oigo cantar al niño.

I hear the child singing. (sing.)

10. The infinitive replaces the subjunctive in French and Spanish after impersonal expressions.

Il me faut y aller.
Me es necesario ir allí.

X. Past Participle

A. The past participle is used in all languages to form the perfect tenses.

J'ai pris.
Ich habe genommen.
El ha tomado.
I have taken.

B. The past participle may be used as an adjective in all languages.

l'eau gelée.
das gefrorene Wasser
el agua helada.
(the) frozen water

C. The past participle is used to form the passive voice in all languages.

81Note different word orders.

82Infinitive precedes noun in French and Spanish.

83Agua is feminine but takes a masculine article due to the fact that it begins in accented a.
X. Past Participle (cont.)
   Il est loué.
   Er wird gelobt.
   El es alabado de ella①84
   He is praised.

   D. The past participle may be used in German and
      French as a noun.
      Die Geliebte. (the loved one)
      le bien-aimé.

XI. Present Participle
   A. The present participle in English and Spanish
      is used to form the progressive tenses①85
      I am singing.
      Estoy cantando.

   B. The present participle may be used in participial
      phrases in all languages①86
      En les suivant il a atteint le but.
      Ihnen folgend erreichte er das Ziel.
      Siguiéndolos, alcansé el fin.
      Following them he reached the goal.

   C. The present participle may be used as an adjective
      in French, German and English①87
      les enfants charmants.
      die reizenden Kinder.
      charming children.

①84Agent must be expressed in Spanish for this form of
   passive voice (true passive). See also footnote No.①47, pg. 218.

①85French and German have no progressive tenses.

①86Note different word orders.

①87The present participle in Spanish cannot be used as
   an adjective.
CHAPTER VI

WORD ORDER

English

I. Affirmative Statements
   A. Simple Sentence
      1. Subject plus verb plus rest of sentence.
         (He has a book.)
   B. Complex Sentence
      1. Subject plus verb plus rest of clause, conjunction plus verb plus rest of clause.
         (It is the book which I bought yesterday.)
   C. Compound Sentence
      1. Subject plus verb plus rest of clause, coordinating conjunction plus subject plus verb plus rest of clause. (He has a book and she has a pen.)
   D. Question
      1. Verb plus subject plus rest of question.
         (Have you the book?)
      2. Auxiliary plus subject plus verb plus rest of question. (Do you have the book?)
      3. Interrogative pronoun plus verb plus rest of question. (Who has the book?)
      4. Isn't it so? etc. (He is here, isn't he?)
   E. Imperative
      1. Verb plus object plus rest of sentence.
         (Tell me what he said.)

II. Negatives
   A. Negative Statement
      1. With auxiliary
         a. Subject plus auxiliary plus negative plus verb plus rest of sentence. (He does not have a book.)

---

1 As in other languages.

3 Comparable to French—n'est-ce pas? German—nicht wahr? Spanish—¿verdad?

2 Some grammarians claim that do should not be used as an auxiliary with to have except in such expressions as "Do you have to go?" etc.
II. Negatives (cont.)

2. With modifier as negative
   a. Subject plus verb plus negative modifier plus rest of sentence. (He has no book.)

   B. Negative Question
      1. Verb plus subject plus negative plus rest of sentence. (Has he no book? Does he not have a book?)

   C. Negative Imperative
      1. Verb plus negative plus rest of sentence. (Do not go there.)

III. Article

A. Precedes the noun, but unlike other languages, it is not obligatory to repeat it before each noun. (The man and woman.)

IV. Adjective

A. May precede or follow but generally precedes. Single adjective modifiers generally precede unless they appear in the predicate. A series of adjectives may precede or follow depending upon the desired emphasis one wishes to denote. (A tall and handsome man, or, a man, tall and handsome.)

V. Adverb

A. The adverb in English is probably the most flexible part of the sentence—may be shifted to practically any position for emphasis.

VI. Objects

A. Generally follow verb.
B. If a verb governs both a direct and an indirect object, the indirect object, if not preceded by to or for, precedes the direct object. (Give him the book, but, Give the book to him.)

VII. Subject

A. Precedes the verb in sentences.
B. Follows the verb in questions unless an interrogative pronoun is used as subject. (Have you gone?, but, Who are you?)

VIII. Verb

A. Generally follows subject.
B. In questions precedes the subject unless an interrogative pronoun or interrogative adjective is used.
French

I. Affirmative Statements
   A. Simple Sentence
      1. Subject plus verb plus rest of sentence.
         (Il a un livre.)
   B. Complex Sentence
      1. Subject plus verb plus rest of clause, conjunction plus subject plus verb plus rest of sentence. (C'est le livre que j'ai acheté hier.)
   C. Compound Sentence
      1. Subject plus verb plus rest of clause, coordinating conjunction plus subject plus verb plus rest of clause. (Il a un livre et elle a une plume.)
   D. Questions
      1. Direct
         a. Verb plus personal pronoun plus rest of question. (Parlez-vous français?)
         b. Noun plus verb plus pleonastic pronouns plus rest of question. (L'homme est-il là?)
         c. Use of interrogative adjective, pronoun, adverb. (Qui est là? Quel livre est là?)
         d. Use of est-ce que. (Est-ce que vous avez la plume?)
         e. Use of n'est-ce pas. (C'est lui, n'est-ce pas?)
   E. Imperative
      A. Verb plus subject plus rest of sentence.
         (Dis-moi ce qu'il a dit.)

---

4 Demonstrative and indefinite pronouns also follow this order. (Cela est-il vrai?)

5 Interrogative words are always placed first.

6 This form is permissible for all types of questions—affirmative and negative.

7 Comparable to Spanish use of ¿verdad? German--nicht wahr? English--isn't it so?
II. Negatives

A. Negative Statement
1. Il n'a pas le livre.)

B. Negative Question
1. N'a-t-il pas le livre?
2. L'homme n'a-t-il pas le livre?
3. Est-ce que vous n'avez pas le livre?

C. Negative Imperative
1. Ne m'y envoyez pas.

D. With Perfect Tenses
1. Ne precedes finite verb and pas is placed between the finite verb and the past participle. (Il n'a pas dit cela.)

III. Article

A. Precedes the noun, must be repeated before each noun, and must agree with each noun in number and gender.

IV. Adjective

A. Demonstrative, possessive, and indefinite adjectives precede each noun which they modify and must agree in number and gender with each noun.

B. Adjectives usually follow the nouns, especially those denoting (1) physical qualities (2) class (rank, nationality, etc.) (3) participial adjectives (4) color (une robe blanche).

C. The following adjectives precede the noun:

- beau - beautiful
- bon - good
- court - short
- gentil - nice
- grand - large, great
- gros - thick
- (une jeune fille)
- jeune - young
- joli - pretty
- long - long
- mauvais - bad
- petit - small
- vieux - old
- vilain - ugly

---

8French is the only language which employs the double negative (ne...pas).

9The t is inserted in French before a pronoun beginning with a vowel. It does not affect word order or change the meaning.

10As in Spanish and German, but unlike English, the adjectives denoting nationality are not capitalized.
IV. Adjective (cont.)

D. Longer adjectives and adjectives joined by *et* follow the noun. (un arbre grand et beau.)

E. Some adjectives change meaning according to position:

- *pauvre* preceding noun means mediocre
- *pauvre* following noun means poor

- *grand* preceding noun means great
- *grand* following nouns means tall

- *brave* preceding noun means honest
- *brave* following noun means courageous

- *méchant* preceding noun means worthless
- *méchant* following noun means malicious

- *honnête* preceding noun means honest
- *honnête* following noun means respectable

- *noir* preceding noun means dismal
- *noir* following noun means black

- *commun* preceding noun means unanimous
- *commun* following noun means vulgar

- *propre* preceding noun means own
- *propre* following noun means clean
- *propre* preceding noun means very
- *propre* following noun means suitable

- *dernier* preceding noun means last of a series
- *dernier* following noun means ultimate

- *cher* preceding noun means dear
- *cher* following noun means expensive

- *petit* preceding noun means small
- *petit* following noun means mean

- *neuf* preceding noun means different
- *neuf* following noun means new

---

11 Comparable to Spanish. This does not exist in English and German.
V. Adverb
A. Usually immediately follows the finite verb. 
(II parle bien.)
B. Is interpolated between auxiliary and participle
in perfect tenses. (II a bien parle.)
C. Adverbs of quantity (peu, beaucoup) and short
adverbs precede the infinitive. (Je ne saurais
mieux faire.) Other longer adverbs follow the
infinitive.
D. For emphasis, adverbs may begin the sentence.
(hier, je l'ai vu.)
E. In questions, interrogative adverbs are placed
first. (Où va-t-elle?)
F. Ne...pas surround the finite verb. (Il n'a pas
dit cela.)
G. With infinitive ne...pas both precede the infini-
tive. (Il essaie de ne pas parler.)
H. Emphatic adverbs begin sentence, such as enfin,
alors, maintenant, surtout. (Enfin, il me parle.)
I. Adverbs usually precede nouns, adjectives, ad-
verbs, and phrases which they modify. (Assez de
livres).

VI. Objects
A. Pronouns
1. Object pronouns are placed before the finite
verb except after affirmative imperatives.
2. If one verb governs both direct and indir-
et object pronouns, the order is:
Subject 1 2 3 4 5 verb
me le lui y en
( se ) les
vous
nous
( se )
VI. Objects (cont.)

1. After affirmative imperative, the object pronouns follow the verb, the direct object precedes the indirect. (Donnez-les moi)16

2. Y and en always follow all other objects. (Il m'en donne.) (Donnez-m'en!)

B. Noun

1. Noun objects follow the verb. (Je le donne à la fille.)17

2. Indirect object noun follows the direct object noun. (Je donne le livre à la fille.)17

C. Noun and Pronoun

1. Pronoun precedes, noun follows verb. (Je le donne à la fille.)

VII. Subject

A. Usually precede verb except as follows

1. Interrogative word order where verb precedes subject unless the subject is a noun, in which case it precedes but is repeated after the verb by means of a pleonastic pronoun. (Est-il là? L'homme est-il là?)

B. In questions if the noun is modified by an interrogative adjective, the subject precedes the verb. (Quel poète est là?)

C. Interrogative subject pronouns precede the verb. (Qui est là?)

D. If est-ce que is used, the subject precedes the verb. (Est-ce que Jean est là?)

E. In relative clauses after où, que, and forms of lequel, the verb precedes the subject.18

F. After certain adverbs the verb precedes the subject. (à peine, etc.)

15In French (unlike other languages) the person of the pronoun determines the order. First person precedes second, second person precedes third, etc.

16These pronouns are not attached to the verb as they are in Spanish, but connected by hyphens. Except before y and en, moi and toi replace me and te when used after the verb.

17As in Spanish.

18This is not obligatory.
VIII. Verb
   A. See subject and object.

   German

   Unlike all the other languages being considered, German has three word orders: (1) Normal (found in independent clauses) (2) Inverted (found in independent clauses, questions, and imperatives) and (3) Transposed (found in dependent clauses).

I. Affirmative Statements
   A. Independent Clauses (Finite verb-second element)
      1. Normal (subject first)
         a. Subject plus modifiers plus verb plus rest of sentence. (Ich kann ihn Heute besuchen.)
      2. Inverted (something besides subject first)
         a. Introductory word plus verb plus subject plus rest of sentence. (Heute kann ich ihn besuchen.)
      3. It will be noted that in both cases the verb is the second element.
   B. Dependent Clauses (Finite verb-last element)
      1. Transposed word order
         a. Conjunction plus subject plus rest of sentence plus verb. (—, da ich ihn heute besuchen kann.)
      2. The finite verb must be the final element in transposed word order even taking precedence over the rule which states that participles and infinitives come last.\(^{20}\)

---

\(^{19}\)Clauses beginning with aber, allein, denn, oder, sondern, und have normal word order.

\(^{20}\)The only exception is when the finite verb precedes the infinitive and past participle of a modal. (Ich weiss, dass er es hat tun können.) The past participle takes precedence over infinitive for final position.
I. Affirmative Statements (cont.)
   C. Questions
      1. Inverted word order—i.e. verb plus subject plus rest of sentence. (Können Sie mit-
         gehen?)
      2. Use of nicht wahr. (Er geht mit, nicht wahr?)

D. Imperative
   1. Inverted word order—i.e. verb plus subject plus rest of sentence. (Geben Sie es mir!)

II. Negative
   A. The word order is the same as for affirmative statements.
   B. If the entire statement is to be negated, nicht is placed at the end of the clause (but not
      after infinitives, participles, or finite verb in transposed word order). (Ich kann ihn nicht
      sehen.)
   C. If only a word or phrase is to be negated, nicht precedes that word or phrase. (Er kann nicht
      laut genug sprechen.)

III. Article
   A. Precedes each noun.
   B. Precedes modifiers of nouns.

IV. Adjective
   A. May be used either attributively (precedes the noun) or in the predicate.

V. Adverbs
   A. Adverbs of time precede adverbs of place.
   B. Adverbs of place precede adverbs of manner.
   C. All adverbs are placed after the objects, if any, otherwise after the verb unless have transposed
      word order.

---

21Comparable to French n'est-ce pas? Spanish ¿verdad? English, isn't it so?

22Except for Sie, the pronoun subjects are omitted in the imperative.

23Except ein may follow such expressions as solch, was für ein, welch. Ein may precede solch but must follow was für and welch.
V. Adverbs
   D. An adverb may be placed first in sentence for emphasis.

VI. Objects
   A. Pronoun
      1. Object pronouns follow the verb unless in transposed word order. The verb is the final element. (Er gibt es mir.)
      2. If one verb has both a direct and an indirect object, both of which are pronouns, the direct object pronoun precedes the indirect. (Er gibt es mir.)

   B. Noun
      1. Noun objects follow the verb as do pronoun objects, unless the finite verb appears as last element in transposed word order. (Er sieht den Mann.)
      2. If one verb has both a direct and an indirect object both of which are nouns, the indirect object precedes the direct. (Er gibt dem Mann das Buch.)

   C. Pronoun with Noun
      1. A noun object (direct or indirect) appearing with a pronoun object (direct or indirect) follows the pronoun object. (Gib es dem Mann! Gib ihm das Buch!)

VII. Subject
   A. In normal word order precedes the verb.
   B. In inverted word order follows the verb.
   C. In transposed word order must occupy second position.

VIII. Verb
   A. In normal and inverted word order (i.e., in any independent clause) occupies second position.
   B. In transposed word order is final element, taking precedence over everything else.

\[24^{24}\text{Unlike Spanish and French but like English.}^{24}\]
\[25^{25}\text{Just opposite from pronoun object order.}^{25}\]
\[26^{26}\text{Except in double infinitive construction (i.e., with modals in perfect tenses having dependent infinitive). (Ich weiss, dass er es hat tun konnen). This can only happen with modals.}^{26}\]
IX. Past Participles and Infinitives

A. Always occupy final position, the past participle taking precedence over the infinitive for final position when both appear together.  

X. Separable Prefixes

A. Many compound verbs are formed with prepositions prefixed to them. These prefixes are separated from the stem of the verb in the simple tenses and stand at the end of the clause in normal or inverted word orders. (Er kam gestern zurück. Gestern kam er zurück.)

B. In transposed word order they remain attached to the verb. (Sie freute sich, weil er gestern zurück kam.)

C. When used in infinitive form they are attached to the verb. (Er will zurückkommen.)

D. In past participles they are attached to the verbal form, but separated from the stem by the ge prefix of the past participle. (Er ist gestern zurückgekommen.)

E. When used with zu, they are separated by zu. (Zurückzukommen.)

Spanish

I. Affirmative Statements

A. Simple Sentence

1. Subject plus verb plus rest of sentence. (Juan tiene el libro.)

27 Except in dependent (transposed) word order when immediately precede finite verb which is last.

28 A peculiarity of the German language. The verbs, as verbs, are comparable to compound verbs in other languages (English, turn—return, etc.; French, prendre—apprendre, etc.; Spanish, tener—obtener, etc.), but in the other languages, once formed, they remain as one word, always united. In German there are cases when they must be separated. English does have a few such verbs—undertake, overlook, etc., but these prefixes once attached to the verb are inseparable.

29 As in French and English.
I. Affirmative Statements (cont.)

B. Complex Sentence
1. Subject plus verb plus rest of sentence plus conjunction plus subject plus verb plus rest of sentence. (Juan tiene el libro que compré ayer.)

C. Compound Sentence
1. Subject plus verb plus rest of sentence plus coordinating conjunction plus subject plus verb plus rest of sentence. (Juan tiene el libro y María tiene la pluma.)

D. Questions
A. Verb plus subject plus rest of sentence. (¿Habla Vd. español?)
B. Question with interrogative pronoun
1. Subject plus verb plus rest of sentence. (¿Quién habla español?)
C. Use of verdad, es verdad. (¿Vste. habla español, ¿verdad?) (¿Es verdad que Vd. habla español?)
D. Imperative
A. Verb precedes subject. Dámelo! (tú form).

II. Negatives
A. Statement
1. Have same word order as affirmative statements, questions, etc. Formed by placing no before the verb. (El no viene hoy).

30 As in French and English.

31A peculiarity of the Spanish language is the omission of the subject pronoun unless it is necessary to avoid ambiguity. In other languages it is included at all times (except in imperative mood).

32Comparable to French use of n'est-ce pas? German, nicht wahr? English, isn't it so?

33 As in German, the formal "you" is the only pronoun used with imperative verbs. (i.e. Vstes and Vstedes in Spanish; Sie in German.)

34All negative words used after a verb require that no be inserted before the verb. (No tengo nada or Nada tengo). Double negatives in English are incorrect.
II. Negatives

B. Question
1. ¿No habla Vd. español?
2. ¿Es verdad que Vd. no habla español?
3. Usted no habla español, ¿verdad?
4. Usted habla español, ¿no es verdad?

C. Imperative
1. Subject and verb are same as affirmative with no preceding the verb. The objects, however, precede the verb. (¡No me lo des!) (tu form)

III. Article
A. Precede each noun and all modifiers of nouns. (El buen muchacho.)

IV. Adjective
A. Adjectives generally follow nouns, especially descriptive adjectives. (La casa blanca) 35
B. Adjectives denoting inherent quality of the noun precede. (La blanca nieve).
C. Limiting adjectives—numerals, articles, possessive, demonstrative, and indefinite adjectives precede. (Mi libro. Este libro, etc.) 36
D. Some very common adjectives precede the nouns. (Un bello árbol) 37
E. Predicate adjectives precede noun in questions. (¿Esta preparada la cena?) 38
F. Some adjectives change their meaning depending upon position.

pobre preceding noun means unfortunate
pobre following noun means poor

grande preceding noun means great
grande following noun means large

nuevo preceding noun means another
nuevo following noun means new

medio preceding noun means half
medio following noun means average

35 As in French.
36 As in other languages.
37 Not obligatory.
38 Do not precede pronouns. (¿Está Usted preparado?)
IV. Adjective
G. Two adjectives governing one noun have three possibilities.
1. Both before—for emphasis. (¡Pobre y pequeña niña!) 39
2. One before and one after. (Una pequeña casa blanca).
3. Both after. (Un libro nuevo y útil) 39
H. If more than two adjectives modify one noun, they follow the noun, the last two being separated by y. (Un hombre pobre, desgraciado y infeliz.)

V. Adverb
A. Adverbs are placed as close as possible to the verb which they modify, even between verb and object. (Habla perfectamente el idioma.)
B. Adverbs modifying adjectives precede the adjectives. (El es muy feo.)

VI. Object
A. Pronoun 40
1. Pronoun objects precede finite verbs except in the affirmative imperative. (El me dio el libro.) 41
2. A verb governing two pronoun objects, indirect and direct, the indirect always precedes the direct. (Me lo dio.) 42
3. When a direct object is not of the third person, the indirect object pronoun, prepositional form, is placed after the verb. (Nos presentaron a ellos.)
4. Pronoun objects are attached to the affirmative imperatives, the indirect preceding the direct. (Dígamelo.)

39 When both adjectives come together, they must be separated by y.

40 Spanish is the only language which, at times, attaches its pronominal objects to the verb.

41 Except as listed in number three.

42 In such double pronoun constructions, le and les are replaced by se when both pronouns are of the third person. (se lo dió.)
VI. Object

5. Pronoun objects are attached to the infinitive forms of verbs, the indirect preceding the direct. (decírmelo).

6. Pronoun objects are attached to the present participle, the indirect preceding the direct. (diciéndomelo).

7. In negative commands, the pronouns precede the verb, the indirect preceding the direct. (¡No me lo digas!)

B. Noun

1. Noun objects may precede or follow the verb depending upon emphasis. (El dio el libro a Juan. A Juan dio él el libro. El libro dio él a Juan.)

2. A verb governing two noun objects, the direct object precedes the indirect. (El dio el libro a Juan.)

C. Noun and Pronoun

1. The pronoun object precedes the verb, the noun object follows. (Lo dio a Juan.)

2. In affirmative imperative, the pronoun object is attached to the verb. (Délo a Juan.)

VII. Subject

A. May follow or precede the verb, as the user desires. (El vendrá el año próximo. Vendrá él el año próximo.)

B. In questions, not using verdad form, the subject follows the verb unless the subject is an interrogative pronoun. (¿Habla él español? ¿Quién habla español?)

VIII. Verb

A. May follow or precede subject at will of user. (El vendrá mañana. Vendrá él mañana.)

B. The past participle may be inverted in certain cases. (Llegado que hubo nos sentamos a la mesa or Luego que hubo llegado nos sentamos a la mesa.)

43This form is most common.
Comparison and Comment

There are few major differences existing in the word orders among the French, Spanish and English languages except for the positions of adjectives and object pronouns. The German word order offers more and greater difficulties and is not so flexible. In independent clauses in German, the verb must always occupy second position, thus allowing the subject to either follow or precede the verb depending upon the first element of the sentence. (Ich bin gestern gekommen—normal word order. Gestern bin ich gekommen—inverted word order, something other than the subject occupying first position). Only one element may precede the finite verb of the independent clause. One cannot say—Yesterday, on arriving, I met him. (Hier, en arrivant, je l'ai rencontré. Ayer, al llegar, me encontré con él. Gestern bin ich ihm begegnet, als ich ankam.

Another peculiarity of the German language is the position of the finite verb in dependent clauses, namely, its occupancy of final position. (Johann, den ich gestern sah, hat es mir gesagt.

44If the subject precedes the verb, the word order is normal. If the subject follows the verb, the word order is inverted (transposed).
The position of the subject in English is always before the verb. In French and Spanish, depending upon the will of the user, the subject may precede or follow.

In French, this occurs mainly in relative clauses. In Spanish, this may occur in any clause, thus allowing more flexibility to this language. (Jean, que j'ai vu hier, or Jean, qu'ai-je vu hier, l'a dit. Juan, que yo ve ayer, or Juan, que ve yo ayer, lo dijó.

**Pronoun Objects**

The German language resembles the English language as concerns the position of pronoun objects. In both languages, such objects follow the verb instead of preceding the verb as they do in French and Spanish. The German order of pronouns is again like the English in that direct object pronouns precede indirect object pronouns, thus:

Er gibt es ihm.
He gives it to him.

but

Il le lui donne.
El se lo da.

---

45Except in questions.

46In Spanish, if the verbal form ending clearly denotes the person of the subject, the pronoun subject may be omitted. (Juan que ve ayer, lo dijo.) This is probably the most common form.
As was seen above, pronominal objects precede the finite verb in French and Spanish, but differences exist in the two languages concerning positions of such objects. In Spanish, indirect object pronouns always precede direct object pronouns regardless of the person of the pronouns. In French, the position depends upon the person of the pronouns, first person pronouns precede pronouns of the second and third persons, and second person pronouns precede third person pronouns regardless of their case. In French, therefore, a direct object pronoun may precede the indirect object pronoun. This would not be possible in Spanish.

\[\text{Il les lui donne.}\]

\[\text{El se los da.}\]

In both French and Spanish, pronoun objects follow an imperative verb. Such pronouns are attached to the verb in Spanish, whereas they are hyphenated to the verb in French. The order remains the same in Spanish; that is, indirect objects precede the direct object. In French, the word order is reversed; that is, third person pronouns precede second person pronouns, etc.

\[\text{Donnez-les-moi!}\]

\[\text{/Demelos!}\]

In Spanish, object pronouns are attached to the end of present participles and infinitives. In French, they precede and follow the regular rules of order for pronominal
objects preceding the verb.
me le dire
me le disant
decírmelo
diciéndomelo

Questions

In all languages a simple question without the
addition of an auxiliary phrase follows the rules of in­
verted word order; that is, the subject follows the verb.47
Avez-vous le livre?
Haben Sie das Buch?
Tiene Vd. el libro?
Have you the book?

In all languages a phrase comparable to the English
phrase is it not so, etc. may be used, in which case, the
word order is normal.
Vous avez un livre, n' est-ce pas?
Sie haben ein Buch, nicht wahr?
Usted tiene un libro, verdad? 48
You have a book, haven't you?

47Unless the subject is an interrogative pronoun or
is modified by an interrogative adjective. In such cases, in
all languages, the subject precedes the verb (normal word
order).

48Spanish also uses es verdad? No es verdad?
The French use of Est-ce que, followed by normal word order, is a peculiarity of that language, but may be compared to the English auxiliary do in questions.

Est-ce que vous avez un livre?

Do you have a book?

Note, however, that the form of the verb after do is infinitive, do receives the inflection. (Does he have a book?)

**Negative**

The most common method of forming negatives in English is by using the auxiliary do and by inserting no before the infinitive used with do.

I do not have a book.

The French method of forming negatives is peculiar in that two parts exist for the negative—ne being inserted before the finite verb and pas immediately following the finite verb.

Je n'ai pas un livre.

The Spanish negative is formed simply by inserting no before the finite verb.

No tengo libro.

In German the negative nicht is placed as nearly at the end of the clause as possible unless only one word is to be negated, in which case, nicht precedes that word.
Ich will es nicht. (Ich kann nicht schnell genug laufen.)

Negatives may be formed in all languages by using negative modifying adjectives.

Je n’ai pas aucun livre.49
Ich habe kein Buch.
No tengo ningún libro.49
I have no book.

Adjective

In all languages adjectives may be used attributively or in the predicate.

Les bons fils        Les fils sont bons.
Die guten Knaben    Die Knaben sind gut.50
Los buenos muchachos Los muchachos son buenos.
The good boys        The boys are good.51

The French and Spanish languages have peculiar rules regarding the position of adjectives, some of which are similar, some of which are different.

1. Descriptive adjectives generally follow the nouns in both languages.

49 Note that in French and Spanish the regular negatives ne...pas and no must still be used. In Spanish the no may be omitted only if the negative modifier precedes the verb—Ningun libro tengo.

50 Adjectives used in the predicate in German do not agree.

51 English adjectives never agree.
une table carrée; una mesa cuadrada

2. Certain adjectives generally precede nouns.
(as in French—beau, bon, jeune, etc. In Spanish—bello, bueno, joven).

le bon homme; el buen hombre

3. Both languages have certain adjectives whose meaning changes depending upon their position; that is, whether they follow or precede the nouns they modify. See pages 245 and 253.

4. In both languages two or more adjectives modifying one noun and connected by et and y will follow the noun.

une dame belle et savante
una dama bella y erudita

5. In both languages two adjectives modifying one noun follow the regular rules governing the position of adjectives; thus, in both languages, both may precede, both may follow, or one may precede and the other follow the noun.

Une jolie, petite fille
une belle maison blanche
une dame belle et savante
una pequeña y bella muchacha

52 If both follow, the adjectives in French must be connected by et; in Spanish, by y.
una bonita casa blanca
una dama bella y erudita

One major difference exists between the two languages concerning the position of adjectives. In Spanish adjectives denoting inherent quality of a particular object precede the word modified. This is not true of French.

la neige blanche
la blanca nieve

**Adverbs**

In all languages, adverbs are generally placed as nearly as possible to the words they modify although in all languages, for emphasis, adverbs may be the first element of the sentence.

It is a peculiarity of the French language that certain short adverbs are interpolated between the auxiliary and the past participle in perfect tenses. (Il a bien parlé.)
DEFINITIONS

Ablative case - see case.
Absolute superlative - see degree.
Accusative case - see case.
Active voice - see voice.

Adjective - a word used to modify or describe a noun or pronoun.
   a. Possessive adjective - an adjective which implies ownership of the object designated or described.

Adverb - a word used to modify or describe a verb, adjective or another adverb.

Agreement - the state of being alike in gender, number, person or case.

Antecedent - the word to which a pronoun refers.

Apocope - the cutting off or omission of the final letter or syllable of a word, the shortening of the word.

Apposition - the relation existing between a noun or pronoun and an explanatory word or expression placed beside it in the same grammatical construction without a connective.

Article - a word used before a noun to limit or define its application without further modification.
   a. Definite article - specific.
   b. Indefinite article - not specific.

Auxiliary verb - a verb which helps to form the tense, mood or voice of other verbs.
   a. Modal auxiliary - infinitive auxiliary.

Case - One of the forms in the declension of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, which shows the relation of that noun, pronoun or adjective to other words in its sentence.
   a. Ablative case - the prepositional case.
   b. Accusative case - the case used to indicate the direct object of a verb (and of some prepositions).
   c. Dative case - the case used to indicate the indirect object of a verb (and the object of some prepositions).
d. Genitive case - the case used to denote possession, origin or separation (and the object of some prepositions).

e. Nominative case - the case used to denote the subject or predicate noun.

f. Objective case - designates the objects of verbs and prepositions.

Clause - a group of related words containing a subject and predicate.

a. Dependent clause - a group of words containing a subject and predicate that depends on the rest of the sentence for completion of the thought or fact it expresses.

b. Independent clause - a group of words containing a subject and predicate which contains a complete thought.

Common gender - see gender.

Comparative degree - see degree.

Complex sentence - see sentence.

Compound sentence - see sentence.

Compound tense - see tense.

Compound verb - see verb.

Compound word - the combining of two or more words to form a new word.

Conditional sentence - see sentence.

Conditional tense - see tense.

Conditional perfect tense - see tense.

Conjunction - a word used to link or join words, phrases or clauses.

a. Coordinating conjunction - used to join words, phrases or clauses of equal rank and value.

b. Subordinating conjunction - used to join clauses that are not of equal value. Used to introduce dependent clauses.

Conjunctive personal pronoun - see pronoun

Contraction - the shortening of words by the omission of letters or by combination with other words.
Coordinating conjunction - see conjunction.

Dative case - see case

Declension - the inflection or regular changes in form as to number, gender, case and person of nouns, pronouns and adjectives.

Definite article - see article.

Degree - one of three grades in the comparison of adjectives and adverbs.
   a. Comparative degree - the second degree in the comparison of adjectives and adverbs (the degree of more).
   b. Positive degree - the simple or first degree of the uncom­pared adjective or adverb (the original form).
   c. Superlative degree - the third and highest degree of comparison of adjectives and adverbs (the degree of most).
      1. Absolute superlative - the superlative degree which does not imply comparison with other things.

Demonstrative pronoun - see pronoun.

Dependent clause - see clause.

Dependent word order - see word order.

Diphthong - the union of two vowels to form a single sound.

Direct discourse - connected expression of ideas, written or spoken exactly as the original words of the speaker or writer were stated.

Direct object - see object.

Disjunctive personal pronoun - see pronoun.

Exclamatory sentence - see sentence.

Feminine gender - see gender.

Finite verb - see verb.

Future perfect tense - see tense.

Future tense - see tense.
Gender - a grammatical distinction, often affecting the form of a word and called according to actual or imagined sex, masculine, feminine, neuter and common.

a. Common gender - the gender applied to words when the actual sex is not designated.
b. Feminine gender - the gender applied to female beings or objects (real or grammatical).
c. Masculine gender - the gender applied to male beings or objects (real or grammatical).
d. Neuter gender - the gender applied to sexless objects (real or grammatical).

Genitive case - see case.

Gerund - a verbal form used as a noun.

Idiom - Those language expressions peculiar to a nation.

Imperative mood - see mood.

Imperative sentence - see sentence.

Imperfect tense - see tense.

Impersonal verb - see verb.

Indefinite article - see article.

Indefinite pronoun - see pronoun.

Independent clause - see clause.

Independent word order - see word order.

Indicative mood - see mood.

Indirect discourse - a connected expression of ideas, written or spoken, in which the thought or intent of the original thought is not in the original or exact form as given by the writer or speaker.

Indirect object - see object.

Infinitive - that form of the verb which merely implies its meaning without implying actual action or state, tense, mood, voice, etc.

a. Perfect infinitive - infinitive formed with itself and a past participle.
b. Present infinitive - same as infinitive.
Inflection - that variation in form and meaning undergone by words to signify gender, number, case, tense, mood, meaning, etc.

Irregular verb - see verb.

Inseparable prefix - see prefix.

Interjection - see sentence.

Interrogative pronoun - see pronoun.

Interrogative sentence - see sentence.

Intransitive verb - see verb.

Inversion - see word order.

Inverted word order - see word order.

Masculine gender - see gender.

Modal auxiliary - see auxiliary.

Monosyllabic - words having one syllable are monosyllabic words.

Mood - that inflection of the verb which shows the condition or manner of the action or state denoted by the verb.

a. Imperative mood - that form which expresses command, advice, exhortation, entreaty or suggestion.

b. Indicative mood - that form which expresses fact, truth, or actuality or expresses a question.

c. Subjunctive mood - that form which denotes condition, proviso, doubt, unreality, desire, etc.

Negative sentence - see sentence.

Neuter gender - see gender.

Nominative case - see case.

Normal word order - see word order.

Noun - a word naming or denoting a person, place or thing.

Number - that characteristic of word forms whereby some denote one object, others more than one.
a. Plural - that form denoting more than one object.
b. Singular - that form denoting one thing.

Object (of a verb) - a word, phrase or clause that receives the action of the verb, thereby completing the predicate.
   a. Direct object - the word, phrase or clause that receives the direct and immediate action of the verb.
   b. Indirect object - the word, phrase or clause to or for which the action was done.
   c. Prepositional object - the noun or pronoun used with a preposition to form a phrase.

Objective case - see case.

Orthography - spelling.
   a. Orthographical changing verbs - those verbs which undergo irregularities and changes in spelling in order to preserve the sounds of vowels and consonants as they were in the infinitive form.

Orthographical changing verbs - see orthography.

Periphrastic - the using of two or more words to form one single thought.

Participle - that form of the verb that, in itself, denotes incomplete action.
   a. Past participle - that form of the verb denoting action going on or incomplete at some past time.
   b. Present participle - that form of the verb denoting action going on or incomplete at the present time.

Particle - a short, subordinate and indeclinable part of speech, such as a conjunction, interjection or, as in French, the ci and là additions to modify the demonstrative adjective.

Partitive - that which denotes a part, some.

Passive voice - see voice.

Past participle - see participle.

Perfect infinitive - see infinitive.

Periphrastic verb - see verb.

Personal pronoun - see pronoun.
Phrase - a group of related words containing neither subject nor predicate.

Pleonastic - redundant, the use of more words than necessary.

Pluperfect tense - see tense.

Plural - see number

Polysyllabic - having more than one syllable.

Positive degree - see degree

Positive sentence - see sentence.

Possessive adjective - see adjective.

Possessive pronoun - see pronoun.

Predicate - that part of the sentence which makes a statement or asserts something about the subject or which denotes the act performed by the subject.

Prefix - a syllable attached to a word at its beginning to change or modify the use or meaning of that word.
   a. Inseparable prefix (as in German) - a prefix which remains an integral part of the verb throughout all its forms and conjugations.
   b. Separable prefix (as in German) - a prefix which may, according to circumstance, be divided from the verb.

Preposition - an indeclinable word used to introduce a phrase.

Present infinitive - see infinitive.

Present participle - see participle.

Present perfect tense - see tense.

Preterite tense - see tense.

Present tense - see tense.

Probability - that which denotes uncertainty or likelihood.

Progressive tense - see tense.
Pronoun - a word used to take the place of a noun or another pronoun.

a. Demonstrative pronoun - a pronoun which designates or defines a certain thing or things.
b. Indefinite pronoun - a pronoun which has unspecific meaning, one which does not refer to definite or specific objects.
c. Interrogative pronoun - a pronoun used in the asking of questions.
d. Personal pronouns - a pronoun used to take the place of a person.
   1. Conjunctive personal pronouns (as in French) - those personal pronoun forms which may be used as subject, direct or indirect object.
   2. Disjunctive personal pronouns (as in French) - those personal pronouns which may be used as prepositional objects and at times, to replace conjunctive forms.
e. Possessive pronoun - a pronoun that denotes ownership.
f. Reflexive pronoun - a pronoun used as object of a verb which is of same person, number, etc., as the subject.
g. Relative pronoun - a pronoun used to introduce a subordinate clause.

Reciprocal verb - see verb.

Redundant - exceeding that which is necessary, superfluous.

Reflexive pronoun - see pronoun.

Reflexive verb - see verb.

Regular verb - see verb.

Relative pronoun - see pronoun.

Root - the basic part of a word without prefixes, endings or suffixes.

Sentence - an organized group of words complete in itself and capable of independent use in making a statement, command or question.
   a. Complex sentence - a sentence containing one independent clause and one or more dependent clauses.
   b. Compound sentence - a sentence containing two or more independent clauses. It may or may not contain dependent clauses.
c. Conditional sentence - a sentence which states a supposition which may or may not be true - has a condition of "if" clause and a conclusion clause.
d. Exclamatory sentence - a sentence denoting emphatic surprise or emotion.
e. Imperative sentence - a sentence denoting a command, entreaty, exhortation, advice or suggestion.
f. Interjection - an exclamation (which see).
g. Interrogative sentence - a sentence which asks a question.
h. Negative sentence - a sentence denoting refusal or denial, opposite of affirmative or positive.
i. Positive - an affirmation.
j. Statement - a declaration, a sentence which states a fact.

Separable prefix - see prefix.

Sequence of tense - see tense.

Sibilant - a letter or group of letters, which, when pronounced, cause a hissing sound (such as s, sh, sch, ch, z, zh, etc.)

Simple tenses - see tense.

Singular - see number.

Statement - see sentence.

Stem - that part of a word free from prefixes, suffixes or inflectional endings, i.e., the root.

Strong verb - see verb.

Subject - that part of the sentence which performs (or receives as in passive voice) the action denoted by the verb.

Subjunctive mood - see mood.

Substantive - a noun or pronoun.

Suffix - a syllable added to the end of a word to modify, limit or change its meaning or use.

Superlative degree - see degree.

Tense - that form of verbs which designate time of the action denoted.
a. Compound tenses - those tenses which are formed by the use of an auxiliary verb to complete the time sense of the verb in question.
b. Conditional tense - that tense which implies provisional circumstance.
c. Conditional perfect tense - that tense which denotes provisional circumstance in perfect tenses.
d. Future tense - that tense which denotes action or state which will take place at a later time.
e. Future perfect tense - that tense which denotes action or state which will take place after a later time.
f. Imperative - that form of the verb used to express commands, advice, entreaty, exhortation or suggestion.
g. Imperfect - that form of the verb used to denote past action going on, the completion of which is not designated.
h. Pluperfect - that form of the verb which denotes action completed before a past time.
i. Present - that form of the verb which denotes action or state at present time, now going on.
j. Present perfect - that form of the verb to denote action complete at present time.
k. Preterite - that form of verb used to denote action or state in past time, the completion of which is either designated or implied.
l. Progressive tense - that tense of the verb which denotes continuous action or state, not completed viewed from a standpoint corresponding to the time of the verb.
m. Sequence of tense (as with subjunctive) - the rules which determine which tense a verb of the subjunctive mood will use, generally dependent upon the tense of the main verb.
n. Simple tense - those tenses which are formed without the aid of an auxiliary verb.

Transitive verb - see verb.

Transposed word order - see word order.

Verb - that part of speech which denotes action or state of being.
a. Compound verb -
   1. A verb which requires an auxiliary to form certain tenses.
   2. A verb formed by addition of prefixes or some modification of another verb.
b. Finite verb - the conjugated form of verb.
c. Impersonal verb - a verb taking an indefinite subject and which denotes indefinite meaning.
d. Intransitive verb - a verb that is incapable of taking an object.
e. Irregular verb - those verbs which do not follow the exact pattern or rule for their inflections.
f. Periphrastic - the combination of two or more ways to express one verbal action.
g. Reciprocal - a verb which denotes mutual action or relation, has a plural subject, each part of which reacts upon the other.
h. Regular verbs - those verbs which adhere to the set pattern or rules for their inflections.
i. Simple verb - one which does not need an auxiliary to complete its meaning.
j. Strong verb (as in English and German) - those verbs which in place of inflectional endings undergo a vowel change.
k. Transitive - a verb capable of taking an object.
l. Weak (as in English and German) - as opposed to strong verbs, those verbs which have inflectional endings throughout the complete conjugation, and do not regularly change the form of the stem.

Verbal - of or pertaining to a verb.

Voice - that form of the verb which is designated as active or passive, indicating whether the subject acts or is acted upon.
   a. Active voice - the voice which denotes that the subject does the acting.
   b. Passive voice - the voice that denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb.
   c. Reflexive voice - the voice which denotes that the subject does the action of the verb and receives that action, i.e., reacts upon itself.

Weak verb - see verb.

Word order - the order or position and arrangement of words into a sentence.
   a. Dependent word order (as in German) - found in independent clauses - that order in which the finite verb is the final element of the clause.
   b. Independent word order (as in German) - that order found in independent clauses - may be either normal or inverted.
c. Inverted word order (as in German) - found in independent clauses - that order in which some element other than the subject has first position, in which case the verb is second and the subject third.

d. Normal word order (as in German) - that order found in independent clauses, in which the subject is the first element and the verb second.

e. Transposed word order (as in German) - that order found in dependent clauses, in which the finite verb appears as the final element of the clause.
BIBLIOGRAPHY

English Books

McKnight, Eaber and Hatfield, A Grammar of Living English (American Book Co., 1939).
Kittredge and Farley, Advanced English Grammar (Ginn & Co., 1913).

French Books

Marchand, Advanced French Grammar (Brentano’s Inc. New York, 1923).
Mansion, French Reference Grammar (D. C. Heath & Co.)
Larousse, Grammaire Superieure (Librairie Larousse, Paris, 1918).
Cochran, Eddy, Redfield, Basic French (Heath & Co., 1936).
Bond, An Introduction to the Study of French (University of Chicago Press, 1926).

The books have been listed in order of their value and material importance to the writer during the compiling of data for this thesis.

German Books


Curts, Basic German (Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1939).


Spanish Books


Seymour & Smithors, Practical Spanish Grammar (Langmans; Green & Co., 1927).


Bello—Cuervo, Gramatica Castellana (Andres Blot, Editor, 6, Caille de la Talpétrière, 6, Paris, 1928).


Dictionaries Used